

SECOND EDITION

THE FRANK J. FABOZZI SERIES

# financial management and analysis workbook

step-by-step exercises and tests to help you master  
financial management and analysis

WILEY FINANCE



frank j. fabozzi, pamela p. peterson & wendy d. habegger

Financial Management and

# **Analysis**

**Workbook**

## THE FRANK J. FABOZZI SERIES

This workbook is the companion, self-study guide to *Financial Management and Analysis: Second Edition*.

Please visit [www.WileyFinance.com](http://www.WileyFinance.com) for more information.

- Fixed Income Securities, Second Edition* by Frank J. Fabozzi  
*Focus on Value: A Corporate and Investor Guide to Wealth Creation* by James L. Grant and James A. Abate  
*Handbook of Global Fixed Income Calculations* by Dragomir Krgin  
*Managing a Corporate Bond Portfolio* by Leland E. Crabbe and Frank J. Fabozzi  
*Real Options and Option-Embedded Securities* by William T. Moore  
*Capital Budgeting: Theory and Practice* by Pamela P. Peterson and Frank J. Fabozzi  
*The Exchange-Traded Funds Manual* by Gary L. Gastineau  
*Professional Perspectives on Fixed Income Portfolio Management, Volume 3* edited by Frank J. Fabozzi  
*Investing in Emerging Fixed Income Markets* edited by Frank J. Fabozzi and Efstathia Pilarinu  
*Handbook of Alternative Assets* by Mark J. P. Anson  
*The Exchange-Traded Funds Manual* by Gary L. Gastineau  
*The Global Money Markets* by Frank J. Fabozzi, Steven V. Mann, and Moorad Choudhry  
*The Handbook of Financial Instruments* edited by Frank J. Fabozzi  
*Collateralized Debt Obligations: Structures and Analysis* by Laurie S. Goodman and Frank J. Fabozzi  
*Interest Rate, Term Structure, and Valuation Modeling* edited by Frank J. Fabozzi  
*Investment Performance Measurement* by Bruce J. Feibel  
*The Handbook of Equity Style Management* edited by T. Daniel Coggin and Frank J. Fabozzi  
*The Theory and Practice of Investment Management* edited by Frank J. Fabozzi and Harry M. Markowitz  
*Foundations of Economic Value Added: Second Edition* by James L. Grant  
*Financial Management and Analysis: Second Edition* by Frank J. Fabozzi and Pamela P. Peterson  
*Measuring and Controlling Interest Rate and Credit Risk: Second Edition* by Frank J. Fabozzi, Steven V. Mann, and Moorad Choudhry  
*Professional Perspectives on Fixed Income Portfolio Management, Volume 4* edited by Frank J. Fabozzi  
*Handbook of European Fixed Income Securities* edited by Frank J. Fabozzi and Moorad Choudhry  
*Credit Derivatives: Instruments, Applications, and Pricing* by Mark J.P. Anson, Frank J. Fabozzi, Moorad Choudhry, and Ren-Raw Chen  
*Handbook of European Structured Financial Products* edited by Frank J. Fabozzi and Moorad Choudhry

Financial Management and  
**Analysis**

**Workbook**

*Step-by-Step Exercises and Tests to Help You Master  
Financial Management and Analysis*

PAMELA P. PETERSON

FRANK J. FABOZZI

WENDY D. HABEGGER



WILEY

John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Copyright © 2004 by Frank J. Fabozzi, Pamela P. Peterson, and Wendy Habegger. All rights reserved.

Published by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Hoboken, New Jersey  
Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning, or otherwise, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc., 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, 978-750-8400, fax 978-750-4470, or on the web at [www.copyright.com](http://www.copyright.com). Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, 201-748-6011, fax 201-748-6008, e-mail: [permcoordinator@wiley.com](mailto:permcoordinator@wiley.com).

**Limit of Liability/Disclaimer of Warranty:** While the publisher and author have used their best efforts in preparing this book, they make no representations or warranties with respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this book and specifically disclaim any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. No warranty may be created or extended by sales representatives or written sales materials. The advice and strategies contained herein may not be suitable for your situation. You should consult with a professional where appropriate. Neither the publisher nor author shall be liable for any loss of profit or any other commercial damages, including but not limited to special, incidental, consequential, or other damages.

For general information on our other products and services, or technical support, please contact our Customer Care Department within the United States at 800-762-2974, outside the United States at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats. Some content that appears in print may not be available in electronic books.

For more information about Wiley, visit our web site at [www.wiley.com](http://www.wiley.com).

ISBN: 0-471-47761-3

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

# Contents

## **PART ONE**

---

<b>Questions and Problems</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1</b>	
<b>Introduction to Financial Management and Analysis</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>CHAPTER 2</b>	
<b>Securities and Markets</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>CHAPTER 3</b>	
<b>Financial Institutions and the Cost of Money</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>CHAPTER 4</b>	
<b>Introduction to Derivatives</b>	<b>25</b>
<b>CHAPTER 5</b>	
<b>Taxation</b>	<b>35</b>
<b>CHAPTER 6</b>	
<b>Financial Statements</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>CHAPTER 7</b>	
<b>Mathematics of Finance</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>CHAPTER 8</b>	
<b>Principles of Asset Valuation and Investment Returns</b>	<b>65</b>
<b>CHAPTER 9</b>	
<b>Valuation of Securities and Options</b>	<b>75</b>

---

<b>CHAPTER 10</b>	
<b>Risk and Expected Return</b>	<b>87</b>
<b>CHAPTER 11</b>	
<b>The Cost of Capital</b>	<b>101</b>
<b>CHAPTER 12</b>	
<b>Capital Budgeting: Cash Flows</b>	<b>109</b>
<b>CHAPTER 13</b>	
<b>Capital Budgeting Techniques</b>	<b>117</b>
<b>CHAPTER 14</b>	
<b>Capital Budgeting and Risk</b>	<b>127</b>
<b>CHAPTER 15</b>	
<b>Intermediate and Long-Term Debt</b>	<b>139</b>
<b>CHAPTER 16</b>	
<b>Common Stock</b>	<b>151</b>
<b>CHAPTER 17</b>	
<b>Preferred Stock</b>	<b>163</b>
<b>CHAPTER 18</b>	
<b>Capital Structure</b>	<b>173</b>
<b>CHAPTER 19</b>	
<b>Management of Cash and Marketable Securities</b>	<b>183</b>
<b>CHAPTER 20</b>	
<b>Management of Receivables and Inventory</b>	<b>193</b>
<b>CHAPTER 21</b>	
<b>Management of Short-Term Financing</b>	<b>203</b>
<b>CHAPTER 22</b>	
<b>Financial Ratio Analysis</b>	<b>213</b>
<b>CHAPTER 23</b>	
<b>Earnings Analysis</b>	<b>227</b>

<b>CHAPTER 24</b>	
<b>Cash Flow Analysis</b>	<b>237</b>
<b>CHAPTER 25</b>	
<b>International Financial Management</b>	<b>245</b>
<b>CHAPTER 26</b>	
<b>Borrowing via Structured Finance Transactions</b>	<b>257</b>
<b>CHAPTER 27</b>	
<b>Equipment Leasing</b>	<b>263</b>
<b>CHAPTER 28</b>	
<b>Project Financing</b>	<b>273</b>
<b>CHAPTER 29</b>	
<b>Strategy and Financial Planning</b>	<b>279</b>
<b>PART TWO</b>	
<b>Solutions</b>	<b>289</b>
<b>CHAPTER 1</b>	
<b>Introduction to Financial Management and Analysis</b>	<b>291</b>
<b>CHAPTER 2</b>	
<b>Securities and Markets</b>	<b>295</b>
<b>CHAPTER 3</b>	
<b>Financial Institutions and the Cost of Money</b>	<b>299</b>
<b>CHAPTER 4</b>	
<b>Introduction to Derivatives</b>	<b>303</b>
<b>CHAPTER 5</b>	
<b>Taxation</b>	<b>309</b>
<b>CHAPTER 6</b>	
<b>Financial Statements</b>	<b>315</b>

---

<b>CHAPTER 7</b>	
<b>Mathematics of Finance</b>	<b>319</b>
<b>CHAPTER 8</b>	
<b>Principles of Asset Valuation and Investment Returns</b>	<b>325</b>
<b>CHAPTER 9</b>	
<b>Valuation of Securities and Options</b>	<b>329</b>
<b>CHAPTER 10</b>	
<b>Risk and Expected Return</b>	<b>335</b>
<b>CHAPTER 11</b>	
<b>The Cost of Capital</b>	<b>341</b>
<b>CHAPTER 12</b>	
<b>Capital Budgeting: Cash Flows</b>	<b>345</b>
<b>CHAPTER 13</b>	
<b>Capital Budgeting Techniques</b>	<b>351</b>
<b>CHAPTER 14</b>	
<b>Capital Budgeting and Risk</b>	<b>359</b>
<b>CHAPTER 15</b>	
<b>Intermediate and Long-Term Debt</b>	<b>365</b>
<b>CHAPTER 16</b>	
<b>Common Stock</b>	<b>371</b>
<b>CHAPTER 17</b>	
<b>Preferred Stock</b>	<b>377</b>
<b>CHAPTER 18</b>	
<b>Capital Structure</b>	<b>381</b>
<b>CHAPTER 19</b>	
<b>Management of Cash and Marketable Securities</b>	<b>385</b>
<b>CHAPTER 20</b>	
<b>Management of Receivables and Inventory</b>	<b>391</b>

---

<b>CHAPTER 21</b>	
<b>Management of Short-Term Financing</b>	<b>395</b>
<b>CHAPTER 22</b>	
<b>Financial Ratio Analysis</b>	<b>401</b>
<b>CHAPTER 23</b>	
<b>Earnings Analysis</b>	<b>407</b>
<b>CHAPTER 24</b>	
<b>Cash Flow Analysis</b>	<b>413</b>
<b>CHAPTER 25</b>	
<b>International Financial Management</b>	<b>417</b>
<b>CHAPTER 26</b>	
<b>Borrowing via Structured Finance Transactions</b>	<b>421</b>
<b>CHAPTER 27</b>	
<b>Equipment Leasing</b>	<b>425</b>
<b>CHAPTER 28</b>	
<b>Project Financing</b>	<b>429</b>
<b>CHAPTER 29</b>	
<b>Strategy and Financial Planning</b>	<b>433</b>



PART

# One

## Questions and Problems



# Introduction to Financial Management and Analysis

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

Refer to Chapter 1, pages 3–24 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ is the application of economic principles and concepts to business decisions and problem solving. It can be divided into three categories: \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ is the management of a firm's cash flow to increase shareholder wealth.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ are decisions made concerning financial management. Financial managers compare potential \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, otherwise known as expected returns. The uncertainty inherent with these returns is referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_.

3. The evaluation of the financial condition and operating performance of a business firm, industry, and economy, and future forecasting of its condition and performance is known as \_\_\_\_\_. It is also used to evaluate specific \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ within a firm and the overall \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ outside the firm.
4. \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ are the three major forms of business organizations. The \_\_\_\_\_ provides the largest percentage of U.S. business incomes, but the majority of businesses are \_\_\_\_\_. Proprietors and \_\_\_\_\_ partners are liable for only business debts, whereas \_\_\_\_\_ partners and the owners of a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ stand to lose only the initial investment.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ are the contract between the shareholders and corporation and authorizes the corporation to issue stock. The \_\_\_\_\_ of a corporation are rules of governance. The owners of a corporation are also called the \_\_\_\_\_. They elect a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ for representative purposes in the major business decisions. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ corporation is owned by a multitude of share holders while a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is owned by a few shareholders. Corporations whose shares are publicly traded must file financial statements with the \_\_\_\_\_.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ business income are subject to the personal income tax rate of the individual owners, whereas a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ pays taxes as a separate legal entity. Cash distributions to shareholders are also taxed as personal income of the owner, leading to what is known as \_\_\_\_\_.
7. A hybrid form of business is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ and it combines the best features of a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ and a(n) \_\_\_\_\_. These types of businesses are treated as a partnership for \_\_\_\_\_ purposes, while the owners are not \_\_\_\_\_ for firm obligations. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a popular form of business that is commenced by a group of persons or entities for a specific business activity in which the relationship only lasts the length of the activity. It may also be structured as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ or a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ and is treated according to how it is structured.
8. The single financial goal is to maximize the \_\_\_\_\_ wealth, which means to maximize the \_\_\_\_\_ of a share of stock for a corporation. The market value of shareholders' equity is the product of the price of \_\_\_\_\_ and the number of \_\_\_\_\_, which are the total number of shares owned by shareholders. The stock price is equal to the \_\_\_\_\_ of all expected future cash flows to owners. In a(n) \_\_\_\_\_, the price of a stock reflects all publicly available information so the investor is unlikely to earn \_\_\_\_\_ profits by trading on information already known to the public. The only

way for an investor to increase the return is to increase the \_\_\_\_\_.

9. \_\_\_\_\_ profit is the difference between revenues and costs, where costs are the unambiguous costs of doing business. \_\_\_\_\_ profits include both explicit and implicit costs. Maximization of \_\_\_\_\_ profits maximizes owners' wealth.
10. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a person acting in the best interest of another person or group of people. The \_\_\_\_\_ is the person or group being represented. Three types of agency costs are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_. Interests of management and shareholders are aligned when executive compensation packages are designed to encourage \_\_\_\_\_-term investment by managers in the stock of the corporation. In particular, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ might be the better forms of compensation as they require the manager to be an owner in the corporation and hold stock for a specified time.







- c. If the business had been a limited partnership, with Annie being the general partner who actively ran the business, what would the financial consequences be for each owner?
- d. If the business had been a corporation with ownership interests based on the proportion of each woman's initial investment, what would the financial consequences be for each owner?

# Securities and Markets

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

Refer to Chapter 2, pages 27–47 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a claim on future cash flows. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a where securities are bought and sold. Securities are classified into three groups: \_\_\_\_\_ securities, \_\_\_\_\_ securities, and \_\_\_\_\_ securities. \_\_\_\_\_ securities have a one year or less original maturity. \_\_\_\_\_ securities are long-term securities issued by corporations and governments.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ is short-term debt of a large corporation with good credit standing. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is the U.S. government's short-term debt. \_\_\_\_\_ certificates of deposit are issued by large \_\_\_\_\_ and are often transferred among investors.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ is the ownership interest in a corporation. \_\_\_\_\_ are the called the residual owners of the firm. Common stock has \_\_\_\_\_ maturity. Cash payments to shareholders are called \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ stockholders are guaranteed a fixed dividend, but are not residual owners of the firm.

4. On a debt security, the \_\_\_\_\_ refers to the borrowed monetary amount. The \_\_\_\_\_ are periodic payments. Debt securities with less than 10 years to maturity are called \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ bonds are debt of state and local governments. These bonds interest payments are exempted from \_\_\_\_\_ taxes. \_\_\_\_\_ bonds are backed by the issuer's taxing power. \_\_\_\_\_ bonds are backed by the proceeds of a specific project. Bond trading is mostly done in the \_\_\_\_\_ market, although small orders are traded on \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ market is where new capital is raised, whereas the \_\_\_\_\_ market is where a shift in funds occurs between investors. Capital is raised in the primary market through \_\_\_\_\_, which are direct sales of the issues to investors, and through \_\_\_\_\_ agreements, which are when investment bankers purchase the securities for immediate resale to the public.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ are actual physical markets in which shares are traded. Transactions in the \_\_\_\_\_ market occur over computers and phone lines. The organized exchanges in the U.S. are \_\_\_\_\_ owned. Exchanges in other countries are often controlled by \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_. There is U.S. government regulation of the financial markets. In particular, The Securities Act of 1933 requires that new securities be

- \_\_\_\_\_. The Securities and Exchange Act of 1934 established the \_\_\_\_\_ Commission.
7. The largest exchange in the United States in terms of market value of the shares traded is the \_\_\_\_\_. The other national exchange is the \_\_\_\_\_. There are seven \_\_\_\_\_ exchanges that trade \_\_\_\_\_ listed securities. The largest over-the-counter market for common stock is known as \_\_\_\_\_ and it is a computerized quotation system. The larger, most actively traded securities in NASDAQ are included in the \_\_\_\_\_. The NASDAQ system is the \_\_\_\_\_ largest market for securities. The Dow Jones Industrial Average is computed using \_\_\_\_\_ stocks. The S&P 500 is an index of \_\_\_\_\_ companies' stocks.
8. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ market is one where asset prices quickly reflect all information that is available. \_\_\_\_\_ form market efficiency means current prices reflect all past prices so investors cannot earn \_\_\_\_\_ profits based on past price movements. The \_\_\_\_\_ form of market efficiency indicates security prices incorporate all information that is available to the public. Empirical evidence suggests that U.S. security markets are \_\_\_\_\_ form efficient. \_\_\_\_\_ form market efficiency implies investors will not earn abnormal profits trading on information that is private. Recent events suggest abnormal profits may be gained by \_\_\_\_\_ trading.

**SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

Refer to Chapter 2, pages 27–47 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. How do stocks differ from bonds?

2. How do common stocks differ from preferred stock?

---

3. What are the similar and differing characteristics between general obligation bonds and revenue bonds?

4. What type of investor would prefer stocks to bonds and why? (Consider the answers for questions 1, 2, and 3.)

5. How do exchanges and over-the-counter markets differ?

## Financial Institutions and the Cost of Money

### FILL IN THE BLANKS

Refer to Chapter 3, pages 49–80 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. In the United States, there is a central monetary authority known as the \_\_\_\_\_ and it acts as the U.S. \_\_\_\_\_ bank. The main function of a central bank is to implement \_\_\_\_\_ policy which controls the availability of \_\_\_\_\_ funds.
2. The interaction between the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ for currency influences the \_\_\_\_\_ rates paid to \_\_\_\_\_ funds and the amount of \_\_\_\_\_ earned on \_\_\_\_\_ funds. The \_\_\_\_\_ for money is dictated by the availability of \_\_\_\_\_ opportunities. The \_\_\_\_\_ of money is determined by a nation's central bank's actions.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ cash, sometimes called \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, or \_\_\_\_\_, is money created \_\_\_\_\_ and functions beyond the scope of banks, checks, coin, and currency overseen by the \_\_\_\_\_. Electronic cash is rapidly gaining in popularity over more traditional \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_. It is more convenient than other forms of money and results in a reduction of \_\_\_\_\_ costs for businesses.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ provide services such as financial intermediaries that alter \_\_\_\_\_ assets purchased in the market and reformulate them into more desirable \_\_\_\_\_. Financial institutions provide \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ advice and manage \_\_\_\_\_ for all types of investors.
5. Corporate financing involves \_\_\_\_\_ funds for a bank's customers and providing \_\_\_\_\_ on such matters as \_\_\_\_\_ for obtaining funds, corporate \_\_\_\_\_, divestitures, and \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Banks are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ by several \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ governments. An encompassing \_\_\_\_\_ in bank regulation in recent years has been the \_\_\_\_\_ Act of 1999, also known as the \_\_\_\_\_ Act. It allows a financial holding company to engage in \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ securities.

7. The \_\_\_\_\_ market makes available the \_\_\_\_\_ issued \_\_\_\_\_ by corporations and other entities seeking to \_\_\_\_\_ funds. The firm issuing a security is the \_\_\_\_\_. The investors working with issuers to \_\_\_\_\_ these securities are called \_\_\_\_\_.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ activities are regulated by the \_\_\_\_\_ Commission. The Securities Act of 1933 governs \_\_\_\_\_ and requires that a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ statement and \_\_\_\_\_ statements be filed with the SEC.
9. Money is not a free \_\_\_\_\_. Those who \_\_\_\_\_ money are willing to \_\_\_\_\_ for it and those who \_\_\_\_\_ money expect to be \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_ is the cost of money; the \_\_\_\_\_ the demand for money. The \_\_\_\_\_ the interest rate; the \_\_\_\_\_ the demand, the \_\_\_\_\_ the interest rate.
10. Bonds are traded in the \_\_\_\_\_ market, thus the \_\_\_\_\_ of the bond may change as the supply and demand for money fluctuates. The \_\_\_\_\_ paid on the bond remains the same, but the bond's \_\_\_\_\_ changes. Most bonds are issued at their \_\_\_\_\_ or par value, meaning that when issued, the \_\_\_\_\_ is frequently equal to the \_\_\_\_\_ rate.

11. The three U.S. commercial rating companies that rate an issuer's \_\_\_\_\_ are \_\_\_\_\_ Investors Service, \_\_\_\_\_ Corporation, and \_\_\_\_\_ Ratings. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ indicates a low credit risk which further translates into a good chance of future payments. The highest-grade bonds are those rated \_\_\_\_\_. Bond issues assigned a rating in the top four categories are \_\_\_\_\_-grade bonds and issues rated below the top four categories are \_\_\_\_\_-grade bonds, or \_\_\_\_\_-yield bonds or \_\_\_\_\_ bonds.
12. Bonds can have option provisions or a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ option that gives the \_\_\_\_\_ and/or the \_\_\_\_\_ an option to take some action against the other party. The most common type of option in a bond issue is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ provision. This provision gives the right to \_\_\_\_\_ the debt, either in full or only in part, before the maturity date. An issue may include a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ provision allowing the bondholder to change the bond's maturity. It allows the bondholder the right to \_\_\_\_\_ the issue back to the issuer at par value on certain dates. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ bond gives the right to exchange the bond for common stock.
13. Two major theories used to explain the observed shapes of the \_\_\_\_\_ curve are the \_\_\_\_\_ theory (which includes the \_\_\_\_\_ expectations theory, the \_\_\_\_\_ theory, and the \_\_\_\_\_ theory) and the market \_\_\_\_\_ theory.



3. How do nondeposit financial institutions manage their financial assets?

4. What are the components of the interest rate and the factors affecting these components?

5. What is the relationship between Treasury spot rates and forward rates? Why are forward rates also called *hedgeable rates*?

6. What is the purpose of the term structure of interest rates?



# Introduction to Derivatives

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

Refer to Chapter 4, pages 83–104 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ contract requires a participant to either \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ something, also known as the \_\_\_\_\_, at a specified future date at a set price. The future price agreed upon is the \_\_\_\_\_ price. The specified date on which the transaction occurs is the \_\_\_\_\_ date.
2. The basic \_\_\_\_\_ function of futures markets is to offer prospects to \_\_\_\_\_ against the \_\_\_\_\_ of price movements. \_\_\_\_\_ contracts are formed by \_\_\_\_\_ and involve traditional \_\_\_\_\_ commodities, imported foodstuffs, and \_\_\_\_\_ commodities. Instruments-based futures contracts are classified as \_\_\_\_\_ index futures, \_\_\_\_\_ rate futures, and \_\_\_\_\_ futures.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ are associated with futures and provide several functions such as \_\_\_\_\_ that two parties will carry out a preagreed transaction. \_\_\_\_\_ risk is the risk that the other party will default on their obligation on the \_\_\_\_\_ date. Due to the use of a clearinghouse, worry is removed from the parties to a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ contract.
4. In a futures contract, the investor must \_\_\_\_\_ a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ dollar amount per contract that the exchange dictates. Called the \_\_\_\_\_ margin, it is required as deposit for the contract. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the futures contract \_\_\_\_\_ and the investor's \_\_\_\_\_ changes. Recording the \_\_\_\_\_ value of a position is called \_\_\_\_\_ a position to \_\_\_\_\_ or simply \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_.
5. When investors assume market positions by \_\_\_\_\_ a futures contract, the investor is in a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ position. On the other hand, if the investor's opening position is the \_\_\_\_\_ of a futures contract, the investor is in a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ position. A futures contract's \_\_\_\_\_ will recognize a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ if the futures price \_\_\_\_\_; the futures contract's \_\_\_\_\_ will recognize a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ if the futures price \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the option grants the \_\_\_\_\_ of the option the right to purchase from

or \_\_\_\_\_ to the writer an asset at a specified \_\_\_\_\_ within a specified \_\_\_\_\_ of time. The option price is also called the option \_\_\_\_\_. The price at which the asset is \_\_\_\_\_ is the strike price. The date after which an option is void is called the \_\_\_\_\_ date.

7. Options exercised at \_\_\_\_\_ time up to and including the \_\_\_\_\_ date are a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ option. Options exercised only at the \_\_\_\_\_ date are \_\_\_\_\_ options. An option that can be exercised \_\_\_\_\_ the expiration date but only on \_\_\_\_\_ dates is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ option.

8. The option price is a reflection of the option's \_\_\_\_\_ value. Any amount over intrinsic value is referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_ premium. The intrinsic value of an option is the \_\_\_\_\_ value of the option if it is \_\_\_\_\_ immediately.

9. In a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ the counterparties agree to exchange \_\_\_\_\_ payments. The \_\_\_\_\_ amount of the payments exchanged is based on the \_\_\_\_\_ amount. \_\_\_\_\_ typically used by \_\_\_\_\_ companies are \_\_\_\_\_ rate swaps, \_\_\_\_\_ swaps, and \_\_\_\_\_ swaps. A swap has the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ profile of a package of \_\_\_\_\_ contracts.

10. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is an agreement whereby the \_\_\_\_\_ agrees to pay the \_\_\_\_\_ when a designated reference \_\_\_\_\_ a predetermined level. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is an agreement whereby the \_\_\_\_\_ agrees to pay the \_\_\_\_\_ when a designated reference is \_\_\_\_\_ than a predetermined level. The designated reference could be a specific \_\_\_\_\_ rate or a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ price. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is equivalent to a package of \_\_\_\_\_ options; a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is equivalent to a package of \_\_\_\_\_ options.

### **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

Refer to Chapter 4, pages 83–104 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. What are derivatives instruments and why are they useful?

2. How are futures liquidated?

3. What are the differences between futures contracts and forward contracts?

4. What are the differences between options and futures contracts?

5. What is the interpretation of a swap?

**PROBLEMS**

---

Refer to Chapter 4, pages 83–104 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. Alex and Adrienne take positions in a futures contract. Alex is the buyer of the futures contract and Adrienne is the seller of the futures contract. If the futures price is \$100, what are the possible outcomes for the market participants if Asset X increases to \$135? If Asset X decreases to \$50?







**FILL IN THE BLANKS**

Refer to Chapter 5, pages 107–122 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. In the United States, \_\_\_\_\_ passes the tax \_\_\_\_\_ that comprises the \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_, a part of the Treasury Department, \_\_\_\_\_ these laws, \_\_\_\_\_ the details, and \_\_\_\_\_ them. The \_\_\_\_\_ does this by \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ tax forms, \_\_\_\_\_ tax payments, \_\_\_\_\_ the law in its regulations, and providing \_\_\_\_\_ in some situations.
2. The U.S. \_\_\_\_\_ originated in \_\_\_\_\_ with a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ tax on corporate income but has since become very \_\_\_\_\_. The financial \_\_\_\_\_ cannot simply assume that the tax rate in existence \_\_\_\_\_ will be the same in the \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_-tax \_\_\_\_\_ of a firm over time must take into consideration the \_\_\_\_\_ tax rates.

3. The \_\_\_\_\_ tax rate is the rate that \_\_\_\_\_ the tax \_\_\_\_\_ and is the rate at which the next \_\_\_\_\_ of income would be taxed. The \_\_\_\_\_ tax rate is the \_\_\_\_\_ of the tax \_\_\_\_\_ to the taxable income. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ tax is one that levies a higher \_\_\_\_\_ tax rate on \_\_\_\_\_ incomes. A company's \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ decision is likely to affect \_\_\_\_\_ income, and hence cash flow, through the \_\_\_\_\_ tax rate.
4. Corporate income distributed to \_\_\_\_\_ as \_\_\_\_\_ is taxed \_\_\_\_\_, first as \_\_\_\_\_ income and then as \_\_\_\_\_ income, and then if the shareholder is another \_\_\_\_\_, it could be taxed a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ time. To minimize the chance of \_\_\_\_\_ or more taxation of the same income, the tax laws permit a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ deduction. This is when a corporate \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ may deduct a portion of its \_\_\_\_\_ income from its \_\_\_\_\_ income. The \_\_\_\_\_ deduction \_\_\_\_\_ the after-tax \_\_\_\_\_ of a corporation \_\_\_\_\_ in another corporation's stock.
5. The two methods of depreciation available to business taxpayers are a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ method and a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ method. A firm can select a method of \_\_\_\_\_ that is based on the expected \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ depreciation of its assets

and the \_\_\_\_\_ on reported \_\_\_\_\_. The current depreciation tax laws are the result of an ongoing trend to create more \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_ methods among business \_\_\_\_\_ while at the same time simplifying the \_\_\_\_\_ and allowing \_\_\_\_\_ depreciation and \_\_\_\_\_ asset lives.

6. According to the tax law, a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is specifically a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ gain that results when an asset is \_\_\_\_\_ for more than was \_\_\_\_\_ for it. Congress has traditionally granted special \_\_\_\_\_ for capital gains through \_\_\_\_\_ effective \_\_\_\_\_ rates.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ tax credit (\_\_\_\_\_) was intended to \_\_\_\_\_ investment spending by directly \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_ income tax. \_\_\_\_\_ can be \_\_\_\_\_ at any time that \_\_\_\_\_ feels investment \_\_\_\_\_ needs to be stimulated. Whereas \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ both \_\_\_\_\_ taxes payable, a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ reduces taxable income and thus \_\_\_\_\_ reduces the taxes paid.

8. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is an excess of business \_\_\_\_\_ over business gross \_\_\_\_\_ in a tax year. The IRC allows businesses to carry \_\_\_\_\_ a net operating loss to \_\_\_\_\_ years and to carry \_\_\_\_\_ the loss to \_\_\_\_\_ years to \_\_\_\_\_ the

taxes payable for those years. The current tax law permits net operating losses of corporations to be carried \_\_\_\_\_ three years from the year of the loss and carried \_\_\_\_\_ for 15 years.

9. Countries typically tax resident corporations on \_\_\_\_\_ income, regardless of whether the \_\_\_\_\_ is repatriated. \_\_\_\_\_ corporations, that is, corporations whose corporate \_\_\_\_\_ and place of \_\_\_\_\_ are outside the country, are typically subject only to \_\_\_\_\_ taxes derived from within the country. The \_\_\_\_\_ rates vary significantly from country to country and some impose \_\_\_\_\_ tax or \_\_\_\_\_ tax rates. These countries are referred to as tax \_\_\_\_\_.

### **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

Refer to Chapter 5, pages 107–122 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. In the United States there are several kinds of taxes imposed. What are they and what is their purpose?

---

2. How does dividend income affect investors? How does dividend income affect the corporation?

3. What are the features of the modified accelerated cost recovery system (MACRS) and how is this different from the straight-line method?

4. Should financial analysts be concerned with taxes? Should financial analysts be concerned with depreciation?

### **PROBLEMS**

---

Refer to Chapter 5, pages 107–122 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. ABC Corporation purchased a new computer system for \$56,000 in 2000. The computer is classified as a seven-year property. What is the depreciation allowance for each year if:
  - a. Straight-line depreciation method is used?

b. MACRS depreciation method is used?

3. What is the depreciation tax shield for ABC Corporation in problem 1 if ABC uses the MACRS depreciation method and has a corporate tax rate of 30%?

4. DEF Incorporated had \$4 million in taxable income from operations and another \$500,000 in dividend income that qualified for an 80% dividends-received deduction. If the firm is taxed at a flat rate of 35%, what is its tax liability?
5. GHI Company had a loss of \$2 million for 2002. Calculate the amount of refund of prior taxes GHI can receive and how much loss can be carried forward, assuming the carry back/carry over rule will be utilized. The firm had income and paid taxes in the four years prior of:

Year	Taxable Income	Taxes Paid (35% of Taxable Income)
1998	\$3,000,000	\$1,050,000
1999	700,000	245,000
2000	500,000	175,000
2001	250,000	87,500

# Financial Statements

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

Refer to Chapter 6, pages 125–144 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ statements are summaries of the \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ activities of a business. They provide useful \_\_\_\_\_ to both \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ in making credit, investment, and other business decisions by allowing them to \_\_\_\_\_ a company's future \_\_\_\_\_ and therefore the \_\_\_\_\_ flows expected to result from those \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The accounting \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_ statements are prepared by the firm's \_\_\_\_\_ according to a set of standards, referred to as \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_ sheet, or statement of financial \_\_\_\_\_ or statement of financial \_\_\_\_\_, is a summary of the \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ of a business at a particular point in time—usually the end of the firm's \_\_\_\_\_ year, thus reflecting \_\_\_\_\_ costs.

3. The \_\_\_\_\_ sheet contains \_\_\_\_\_—the resources of the business enterprise, such as plant and equipment that are used to generate \_\_\_\_\_ benefits such as cash \_\_\_\_\_; \_\_\_\_\_—obligations of the business and commitments to \_\_\_\_\_ in the form of future cash \_\_\_\_\_; and \_\_\_\_\_, also called \_\_\_\_\_ equity or \_\_\_\_\_ equity, reflecting \_\_\_\_\_ of the firm that is not owed to creditors.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ are made up of \_\_\_\_\_ liabilities, \_\_\_\_\_ liabilities, and \_\_\_\_\_ taxes. Current liabilities are obligations that must be paid within one \_\_\_\_\_ cycle or \_\_\_\_\_ year, whichever is longer. \_\_\_\_\_ payable, \_\_\_\_\_ expenses, \_\_\_\_\_ of long-term debt, and \_\_\_\_\_ loans are current liabilities. \_\_\_\_\_ liabilities are obligations that must be paid over a period \_\_\_\_\_ one year. They include \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ obligations, and \_\_\_\_\_ obligations.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ is the owner's \_\_\_\_\_ in the company. For a corporation, ownership is represented by \_\_\_\_\_ stock and \_\_\_\_\_ stock. Shareholders' equity is also referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_ of equity, as this is the value of \_\_\_\_\_ according to the records in the accounting books. The book value of equity is the \_\_\_\_\_ total of \_\_\_\_\_ earnings, \_\_\_\_\_ stock, and (if applicable) \_\_\_\_\_

- stock and it represents the equity interest of the corporation's owners, stated in terms of \_\_\_\_\_ costs.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ shareholders' equity is the product of the number of \_\_\_\_\_ shares outstanding and the par value of the \_\_\_\_\_; it is shown that way on the \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the equity belongs to the \_\_\_\_\_ shareholders. It consists of three parts: \_\_\_\_\_ stock outstanding (listed at par or at stated value), additional \_\_\_\_\_ capital, and \_\_\_\_\_ earnings.
7. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ statement is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ of a business over a period of time, usually one month, three months, or one year. This statement also is referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ statement and shows the results of the firm's \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ decisions during that time.
8. The statement of \_\_\_\_\_ is a summary over a period of time of a firm's \_\_\_\_\_ flows from \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ activities. The firm's statement of \_\_\_\_\_ lists separately its \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows, \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows, and \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows. A firm that generates cash flows only by \_\_\_\_\_ off its \_\_\_\_\_ (obtaining cash flows from investments) or by \_\_\_\_\_ more \_\_\_\_\_ (obtaining

cash flows from financing) cannot keep that up for very long. For future prosperity the firm must be able to generate cash flows from its \_\_\_\_\_, which is the most complex of the three.

9. Cash flow from \_\_\_\_\_ is generally obtained \_\_\_\_\_. The computation of the cash flows from \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ activities is straightforward. The cash flow from (used for) \_\_\_\_\_ activities includes cash flow due to \_\_\_\_\_ in plant assets, the \_\_\_\_\_ of plant assets, \_\_\_\_\_ of other companies, and \_\_\_\_\_ of subsidiaries. The cash flow from (used for) \_\_\_\_\_ activities includes cash flows due to the \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ of common or preferred \_\_\_\_\_, the \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ of long-term \_\_\_\_\_ securities, and the \_\_\_\_\_ of common and preferred \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Additional information about \_\_\_\_\_ can be found in the statement of \_\_\_\_\_ equity, which is a breakdown of the amounts and changes in \_\_\_\_\_ accounts. This statement serves as a connecting link between the \_\_\_\_\_ sheet and the \_\_\_\_\_ statement, providing the \_\_\_\_\_ with more detail on changes in the individual \_\_\_\_\_ accounts. Whereas the \_\_\_\_\_ sheet provides information on the \_\_\_\_\_ of shares outstanding at a specific point in time, the statement of \_\_\_\_\_ provides more detail on any changes,

including shares issued to satisfy the \_\_\_\_\_ of stock \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ shares.

### **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

Refer to Chapter 6, pages 125–144 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. What are the assumptions under which financial statements are created, used, and interpreted?

2. Name and describe the two categories of assets.

3. Define and provide examples of intangible assets.

4. Describe and list the labeling treatment shares receive on the balance sheet.

5. Why is it important to analyze the statement of cash flows? What does it tell an investor?

## PROBLEMS

---

Refer to Chapter 6, pages 125–144 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. Complete the following balance sheet:

Cash	\$15,000	Accounts payable	\$34,000
Inventory	<u>          </u>	Notes payable	3,000
Gross plant and equipment	50,000	Long-term debt	<u>          </u>
Accumulated depreciation	<u>          </u>	Common equity	12,000
Net plant and equipment	32,500		
Total assets	\$75,000	Total liabilities and equity	\$75,000

2. Construct a statement of cash flows given the following information:

Common stock dividends are 40% of earnings available to common shareholders.

Earnings before taxes are \$45,000.

Preferred stock dividends are \$20,000.

Taxes are 30% of earnings.

3. Construct a statement of cash flows given the following information:

\$15,000 in new long-term debt is issued.

\$45,000 of common stock is repurchased.

Common stock dividends are \$10,000.

Current liabilities are decreased by \$30,000.

Depreciation is \$60,000.

Net income is \$54,000.

Plant and equipment purchased during the period is \$58,000.



# Mathematics of Finance

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

Refer to Chapter 7, pages 147–187 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ of money is used to equate \_\_\_\_\_ flows at \_\_\_\_\_ points in time. One dollar received in the \_\_\_\_\_ is not as \_\_\_\_\_ as a dollar received \_\_\_\_\_ because it could be \_\_\_\_\_ today and earn \_\_\_\_\_. The process of calculating what one dollar today will be worth in the future is called \_\_\_\_\_ while the reverse is \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The amount that you are willing to \_\_\_\_\_ today is the loan's \_\_\_\_\_ value. The amount that you \_\_\_\_\_ to be \_\_\_\_\_ at the end of the loan period is the loan's \_\_\_\_\_ value. Therefore, the \_\_\_\_\_ period's value is comprised of two parts: Future Value = \_\_\_\_\_ value + \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_ is compensation for the \_\_\_\_\_ of funds for a specific period. It consists of

- compensation for the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ the money is borrowed and compensation for the \_\_\_\_\_ that the amount \_\_\_\_\_ will not be \_\_\_\_\_ exactly as set forth in the loan agreement.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ valuation equation,  $FV = \text{_____}$ , is used to translate \_\_\_\_\_ values into \_\_\_\_\_ values and to translate \_\_\_\_\_ values into \_\_\_\_\_ values. It also can be algebraically manipulated to solve for the \_\_\_\_\_ rate and the number of \_\_\_\_\_ periods. This basic relationship includes \_\_\_\_\_ compounding—that is, \_\_\_\_\_ earnings on \_\_\_\_\_ already earned.
4. We can use \_\_\_\_\_ mathematics to value many different \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ flows, including \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ due, and \_\_\_\_\_ annuities. Applying the tools to these different patterns of cash flows requires us to take care in specifying the \_\_\_\_\_ of the various cash flows. \_\_\_\_\_ containing \_\_\_\_\_ factors, \_\_\_\_\_ factors, \_\_\_\_\_ value \_\_\_\_\_ factors, and \_\_\_\_\_ value \_\_\_\_\_ factors can be used to reduce the computations involved in financial math.
5. When faced with a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ flows, we must value each \_\_\_\_\_ flow individually, and then \_\_\_\_\_ these individual values to arrive at the \_\_\_\_\_ value of the \_\_\_\_\_ value of the series. The work can be cut a bit shorter if these

cash flows are \_\_\_\_\_ and occur at \_\_\_\_\_ intervals of time.

6. Valuing a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ cash flow stream is just like valuing a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ annuity. The \_\_\_\_\_ annuity cash flow analysis assumes that cash flows occur at the \_\_\_\_\_ of each period. However, it is fairly common to receive \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows at the \_\_\_\_\_ of the period; this is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.

7. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ annuity has a stream of cash flows of \_\_\_\_\_ amounts at regular periods starting at some time \_\_\_\_\_ the end of the first \_\_\_\_\_. With a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ annuity, the \_\_\_\_\_ value of the \_\_\_\_\_ annuity is determined and then \_\_\_\_\_ to a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ period.



**PROBLEMS**

---

Refer to Chapter 7, pages 147–187 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. Using a 7.5% compounded interest rate per period, calculate the future value of a \$500 investment:

a. One period into the future

b. Five periods into the future

c. Ten periods into the future

4. Using a 7.5% compounded interest rate per period, calculate the present value of a \$500 investment to be received:

a. One period into the future

b. Five periods into the future

c. Ten periods into the future

4. If Natalie deposits \$1,000 in her savings account and earns 4.5% interest per year:

a. How much would she have after three years if she left the money in the account to earn compound interest?

b. How much interest has she earned?

c. If she would have withdrawn the interest each year, how much total interest would she have earned?

4. What growth rate does Larry need to double his initial investment over a five-year period?

5. How long will it take Wendy's \$4,000 investment, compounded at 5% annual interest, to earn an additional \$2,000?
6. Randy wants to borrow money for some home improvements. He has received several different quotes. Bank A will charge him 14.5% compounded annually, Bank B will charge him 14% compounded monthly, and his best friend will charge him 13.75% compounded continuously. Which is the better deal?

7. A credit card company advertises that it charges 2.9% interest on unpaid balances per month. What is the APR and EAR for this advertised rate?
8. What is the future value at the end of the third period of the following series of end-of-period cash flows, using an interest rate of 10% compounded per period?

Period	End-of-Period Cash Flows
0	\$150
1	\$300
2	\$225
3	\$410

9. Suppose an investment promises to provide the following cash flows:

Year	End-of-Year Cash Flow
1	\$2,500
2	\$3,000
3	\$5,000
4	-\$2,500

If interest is compounded annually at 12%, what is the value of this investment at the end of Year 0?

10. Suppose that you have won the Georgia Lotto worth \$48 million. Further suppose that the State of Georgia will pay you the winnings in 20 annual installments, starting immediately, of \$2,400,000 each. If your opportunity cost is 10%, what is the value today of these 20 installments?

11. Faith is saving money to send her son to college. If he is ten years old now, how much must she deposit now, at 7%, so that when he turns 18 and goes to college, he will be able to withdraw \$20,000 a year for four years to pay for his college tuition?

# Principles of Asset Valuation and Investment Returns

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

Refer to Chapter 8, pages 195–208 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ manager must decide whether a particular investment is \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ investment will \_\_\_\_\_ shareholder wealth whereas a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ one \_\_\_\_\_. To decide whether an investment is \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_, the manager must determine whether the \_\_\_\_\_ from the investment that are often expected in future periods will \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_. To make the \_\_\_\_\_ investment decisions, the \_\_\_\_\_ manager also must consider the way the investment is \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ rate or \_\_\_\_\_ rate for the future cash flows is used to \_\_\_\_\_ these future cash flows into a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ value. This \_\_\_\_\_ rate represents how much an investor is willing to

\_\_\_\_\_ today for the \_\_\_\_\_ to receive the future cash flow. Or, to put it another way, the discount rate is the rate of \_\_\_\_\_ the investor \_\_\_\_\_ on an investment, given the \_\_\_\_\_ he or she is willing to pay for its \_\_\_\_\_ future cash flow. Whether a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ future cash flow, a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of level cash flows, a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of cash flows having different amounts, or a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ series of cash flows, to determine its \_\_\_\_\_ value, knowledge of the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ of the future cash flows, as well as the \_\_\_\_\_ rate that reflects the uncertainty of these cash flows are necessary.

3. If investors are risk \_\_\_\_\_ then they do not like \_\_\_\_\_. They will value an asset using a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ discount rate the more \_\_\_\_\_ they are about the future cash flows. \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ will continue to \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ until they have exhausted what they believe are all the \_\_\_\_\_ opportunities. When that happens, the assets are neither \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ priced. This point where buying and selling is in \_\_\_\_\_ is referred to as a market \_\_\_\_\_.

4. The \_\_\_\_\_ of an asset is determined by the investor with the \_\_\_\_\_ valuation of the asset. As long as an asset can be traded without any \_\_\_\_\_ in a market, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ will determine its price. However, if

- there are frictions to trading such as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ on the quantity or high transaction \_\_\_\_\_, trading is inhibited and the asset's price will not reflect the \_\_\_\_\_ value.
5. There is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ relation between the \_\_\_\_\_ of an asset and the \_\_\_\_\_ rate applied to future cash flows: the \_\_\_\_\_ this \_\_\_\_\_ rate, the \_\_\_\_\_ today's \_\_\_\_\_, and the \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_ rate, the \_\_\_\_\_ today's \_\_\_\_\_.
6. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is the \_\_\_\_\_ an investor receives from an investment. It can be in the form of a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ the in the \_\_\_\_\_ of the asset through \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_, a cash \_\_\_\_\_ from the investment, such as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ or a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ payment, or \_\_\_\_\_ a cash \_\_\_\_\_ and a change in \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ on an investment is also referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_. The most common way of reporting a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ is on a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ basis, expressed as the \_\_\_\_\_ annual return. Another name for this \_\_\_\_\_ is the \_\_\_\_\_ rate of return (\_\_\_\_\_). The \_\_\_\_\_ annual return on an investment is the \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_ average, not the \_\_\_\_\_ average because it ignores any \_\_\_\_\_.

8. The \_\_\_\_\_ rate that equates an investment's initial \_\_\_\_\_ with value of the \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows it produces is the \_\_\_\_\_ rate of return. The \_\_\_\_\_ rate of return is aptly named as we are assuming that the cash \_\_\_\_\_ are reinvested at the \_\_\_\_\_ return as the rest of the investment, its \_\_\_\_\_ return.
9. The \_\_\_\_\_ annual return on an investment considers \_\_\_\_\_. If we assume the cash flows are \_\_\_\_\_ at a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ return, the return on the investment is referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_ rate of return (\_\_\_\_\_).



3. What are the differences among the average annual return, the arithmetic average annual return, and the geometric average annual return? Which one is preferred and why?

### **PROBLEMS**

---

Refer to Chapter 8, pages 195–208 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. Numerically illustrate the answer to short answer 1 from the section above, using the following information. Suppose Karen wants to make an investment today that will have a future value of \$500 one year from today. If she has the choice of a 5% discount rate or a 6% discount rate, which investment should she choose?



4. Consider an investment with the following cash flows:

Year	Cash Flows
2003	\$20,000
2004	\$40,000
2005	\$25,000
2006	\$35,000

a. What is the annual return on the investment if an investor invests \$100,000 at the end of 2002?

b. What is the most the investor would invest so that the return on the investment is at least 10%?

3. Suppose \$25,000 is invested and it provides a return of 8% in the first year, 12% in the second year, and 15% in the third year. The value of the investment is maintained in the investment and it grows each year (i.e., the investment has no cash flows).

a. What is the investment worth at the end of the third year?

b. What is the average annual return on this investment?



# Valuation of Securities and Options

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

Refer to Chapter 9, pages 211–251 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

- Investing in \_\_\_\_\_ stock represents a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ interest in a corporation. \_\_\_\_\_ of common stock are a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ security meaning there is no \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ of common stock have the \_\_\_\_\_ to receive a certain portion of any \_\_\_\_\_, however dividends are not \_\_\_\_\_. Typically \_\_\_\_\_ are either \_\_\_\_\_ or grow at a somewhat \_\_\_\_\_ rate.
- \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ are debt securities obligating the borrower to pay \_\_\_\_\_ at regular intervals, typically \_\_\_\_\_, and to repay the \_\_\_\_\_ amount borrowed, referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_ value. The interest payment is called \_\_\_\_\_. If these coupons are a(n) \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_ amount, paid at regular intervals, we refer to the security paying them as having a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ coupon. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_-coupon note or bond does not promise to pay interest periodically; instead it pays only at the \_\_\_\_\_ date.

3. The \_\_\_\_\_ Model (\_\_\_\_\_ ) is a formula that can be used to \_\_\_\_\_ a share of \_\_\_\_\_ if the \_\_\_\_\_ is either \_\_\_\_\_ or grows at a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ rate. The model states that the \_\_\_\_\_ of a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of stock is equal to the ratio of next period's \_\_\_\_\_ to the \_\_\_\_\_ between the \_\_\_\_\_ rate of \_\_\_\_\_ and the \_\_\_\_\_ rate of \_\_\_\_\_. Using the DVM, the \_\_\_\_\_ rate of \_\_\_\_\_ on a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a function of the stock's \_\_\_\_\_ yield and its \_\_\_\_\_ yield. Using the same model, the \_\_\_\_\_ rate is a function of the \_\_\_\_\_ payout such that the \_\_\_\_\_ the payout, the \_\_\_\_\_ the growth of future dividends and vice versa; the \_\_\_\_\_ the payout, the \_\_\_\_\_ it has to \_\_\_\_\_ into the firm for the future and the \_\_\_\_\_ the expected growth rate in the future.

4. If \_\_\_\_\_ are \_\_\_\_\_ forever, the \_\_\_\_\_ of a share of stock is the \_\_\_\_\_ value of the \_\_\_\_\_ per share per \_\_\_\_\_, in \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_ rate of

\_\_\_\_\_ (\_\_\_\_\_) is the return shareholders demand to \_\_\_\_\_ them for the \_\_\_\_\_ of money tied up in their investment and the \_\_\_\_\_ of the \_\_\_\_\_ cash \_\_\_\_\_ from these investments.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ cost is what investors could have \_\_\_\_\_ on \_\_\_\_\_ investments with \_\_\_\_\_ risk. This \_\_\_\_\_ return is the \_\_\_\_\_ rate of \_\_\_\_\_, or the \_\_\_\_\_ rate, compensating the share owners for the \_\_\_\_\_ of money and \_\_\_\_\_. The required rate of return is made up of the \_\_\_\_\_ yield plus the rate the share \_\_\_\_\_ is expected to \_\_\_\_\_, the \_\_\_\_\_ yield. It becomes important to consider whether or not we actually realize the \_\_\_\_\_ yield only when we are dealing with \_\_\_\_\_ because \_\_\_\_\_ must be paid on the \_\_\_\_\_ gain only when it is \_\_\_\_\_.

6. When valuing \_\_\_\_\_, the present \_\_\_\_\_ is dependent on the relation between the \_\_\_\_\_ rate and the \_\_\_\_\_. If the \_\_\_\_\_ rate is more than the \_\_\_\_\_, the security is worth \_\_\_\_\_ than its \_\_\_\_\_ value and it sells at a(n) \_\_\_\_\_. If the \_\_\_\_\_ rate is less than the \_\_\_\_\_, the security is worth \_\_\_\_\_ than its maturity value and it sells at a(n) \_\_\_\_\_. If the \_\_\_\_\_ rate is equal to

the yield, the security is \_\_\_\_\_ at its maturity value.

7. A stock option is the \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ a particular common stock at a specified price within a specified period. These options are \_\_\_\_\_ created by the company that issued the underlying \_\_\_\_\_; rather, they are created by the \_\_\_\_\_ on which the option is to be \_\_\_\_\_. The right to \_\_\_\_\_ an asset is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ option. It gives the investor the right to \_\_\_\_\_ a share of stock at the \_\_\_\_\_ price, or \_\_\_\_\_ price, before the \_\_\_\_\_ date. The right to \_\_\_\_\_ an asset is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ option.

8. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ bond is a bond that can be converted into common \_\_\_\_\_ at the option of the \_\_\_\_\_. This bond is therefore a combination of a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ bond, a bond \_\_\_\_\_ such a conversion feature, and an option to convert the bond to shares of \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ bonds have a call feature that allows the bond \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ back the bonds from the \_\_\_\_\_ at a specified \_\_\_\_\_, the \_\_\_\_\_ price, during a specified period \_\_\_\_\_ the bond's maturity date. Some bonds are both \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

**SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

Refer to Chapter 9, pages 211–251 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. What is the relation between present value, maturity value, and selling price of a bond?

2. How are common stock, preferred stock, and debt securities valued?

3. What factors affect the time value of an option?

4. What is the Dividend Valuation Model and why is it useful for valuation purposes?

5. Compare the yield-to-maturity and yield-to-call for a bond.

## **PROBLEMS**

---

Refer to Chapter 9, pages 211–251 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. A bond has a coupon rate of 10%. Interest rates are expected to decrease due to a newly instituted economic package. What will happen to the price of this bond? Why?





6. An issue of bonds with a \$1,000 face value paying a 12% coupon rate will mature in five years. Similar risk investments have an effective yield of 14% interest paid semiannually. At what price will the bonds be selling? If an investor bought a bond for the indicated price and held it to maturity, what would his average annual promised yield be?
7. An issue of JRJ Nibasco bonds pays a  $9\frac{3}{8}\%$  coupon and sold for 100 at the end of the year. If the bond sold for  $103\frac{3}{4}$  at the end of the year, what return would an investor have earned for the year? What is the capital yield and the coupon yield on the bond?

8. What is the yield to maturity of an issue of zero-coupon bonds that mature in eight years and are selling for  $\$63\frac{7}{8}$ ?

9. An investor bought 1,000 shares of stock for \$5 a share in her online trading account. The transaction cost for her was \$10.99. One week later, she sold the shares for  $\$8\frac{5}{8}$ , again incurring a \$10.99 fee. The investor did not keep the investment long enough to qualify to receive any dividends from the company. What was her return on this investment?

10. A \$1,000 bond of Needs-A-Name Corporation pays a 10% coupon and is selling for \$108. The bond pays interest semiannually and is callable in four years at par plus one year's interest. What is its yield to call?

## Risk and Expected Return

### FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

Refer to Chapter 10, pages 257–302 in *Financial Management And Analysis*.

1. There is \_\_\_\_\_ in almost everything financial managers do because no one \_\_\_\_\_ precisely what changes will occur in such things as \_\_\_\_\_ laws, consumer \_\_\_\_\_, the \_\_\_\_\_, or \_\_\_\_\_ rates. Though the terms \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ are often used to mean the same thing, there is a distinction between them. \_\_\_\_\_ is the lack of \_\_\_\_\_ what will happen in the future. \_\_\_\_\_ is how we characterize the degree of \_\_\_\_\_: the \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_, the \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ flow risk comprises \_\_\_\_\_ risk, \_\_\_\_\_ risk, and \_\_\_\_\_ risk. \_\_\_\_\_ risk is the degree of \_\_\_\_\_ regarding the number of \_\_\_\_\_ of a(n)

\_\_\_\_\_ or service the firm will be able to sell and the \_\_\_\_\_ of these units. \_\_\_\_\_ risk is the uncertainty arising from the mix of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ operating costs. \_\_\_\_\_ risk is the uncertainty arising from the firm's \_\_\_\_\_ decisions.

3. The more burdened a firm is with \_\_\_\_\_, required \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ payments, the more likely it is that \_\_\_\_\_ promised to \_\_\_\_\_ will not be made and that there will be nothing left for the \_\_\_\_\_. We refer to the \_\_\_\_\_ flow risk of a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ security as \_\_\_\_\_ risk or \_\_\_\_\_ risk. Technically, \_\_\_\_\_ risk on a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ security depends on the specific obligations comprising the debt.
  
4. \_\_\_\_\_ rate risk is the uncertainty associated with \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows. If \_\_\_\_\_ fall, one cannot \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_ payments from the \_\_\_\_\_ and get the same \_\_\_\_\_ as before. Of two bonds with the same \_\_\_\_\_-to-maturity and the same \_\_\_\_\_ rate, the bond with the \_\_\_\_\_ maturity has \_\_\_\_\_ reinvestment risk as it has \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows to \_\_\_\_\_ throughout its life. Likewise, of two bonds with the same \_\_\_\_\_-to-maturity and the same \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_, the bond with the \_\_\_\_\_ coupon rate has \_\_\_\_\_ reinvestment rate risk because it has

more of its \_\_\_\_\_ coming sooner in the form of cash flows.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ rate risk is the \_\_\_\_\_ of the change in an asset's \_\_\_\_\_ to changes in market \_\_\_\_\_ rates. \_\_\_\_\_ interest rates determine the \_\_\_\_\_ used to \_\_\_\_\_ a future value to a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ value, therefore the value of any investment depends on the rate used to \_\_\_\_\_ its cash flows to the present.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ power risk is the risk that the \_\_\_\_\_ may increase unexpectedly. For example, if a firm \_\_\_\_\_ funds by issuing a(n) \_\_\_\_\_-term bond with a fixed \_\_\_\_\_ rate and the price level \_\_\_\_\_, the firm \_\_\_\_\_ from a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ in the price level and its \_\_\_\_\_ is harmed because interest and the principal are repaid in a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ currency.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ risk is the risk that the relative values of the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ currencies will change in the future, changing the \_\_\_\_\_ of the \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows. \_\_\_\_\_ risk must be considered when investments generate \_\_\_\_\_ flows in another \_\_\_\_\_.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ aversion is the \_\_\_\_\_ and avoidance of risk. A risk \_\_\_\_\_ investor will

\_\_\_\_\_ risky investments. Risk \_\_\_\_\_ indicates indifference towards risk. Risk \_\_\_\_\_ persons do not need \_\_\_\_\_ for bearing \_\_\_\_\_. Risk \_\_\_\_\_ indicates a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ for risk—someone who is even willing to pay to take on risk.

9. \_\_\_\_\_ is the combination of assets whose returns do not \_\_\_\_\_ with one another in the \_\_\_\_\_ direction at the \_\_\_\_\_ time. If the \_\_\_\_\_ on investments move together, they are \_\_\_\_\_ with one another. Correlation is the \_\_\_\_\_ for two or more sets of data to vary together. The \_\_\_\_\_ on two investments are \_\_\_\_\_ correlated if one tends to vary in the \_\_\_\_\_ direction at the same time as the other, and \_\_\_\_\_ correlated if one tends to vary in the \_\_\_\_\_ direction with respect to the other. They are \_\_\_\_\_ if there is \_\_\_\_\_ relation between the changes in one to changes in the other.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ that goes away as we \_\_\_\_\_ assets is diversifiable risk; this is also referred to as \_\_\_\_\_ risk or \_\_\_\_\_-specific risk. \_\_\_\_\_ that cannot be reduced by adding more \_\_\_\_\_ is nondiversifiable risk, also referred to as \_\_\_\_\_ risk or \_\_\_\_\_ risk.

11. \_\_\_\_\_ took the idea that portfolio \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ are the only elements to consider and developed a model that deals with how \_\_\_\_\_ are priced. This model is referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_ asset \_\_\_\_\_ model (\_\_\_\_\_). The \_\_\_\_\_ specifies that the \_\_\_\_\_ on any \_\_\_\_\_ is a function of the \_\_\_\_\_ on a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ asset plus a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ premium. The \_\_\_\_\_ on the risk-free asset is \_\_\_\_\_ for the time \_\_\_\_\_ of money. The risk \_\_\_\_\_ is the \_\_\_\_\_ for bearing \_\_\_\_\_. Therefore CAPM says: The market portfolio represents the most well \_\_\_\_\_ portfolio with the only \_\_\_\_\_ in a portfolio comprising all \_\_\_\_\_ being \_\_\_\_\_ risk, also called \_\_\_\_\_ risk or \_\_\_\_\_ risk.

12. An alternative to \_\_\_\_\_ in relating \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ is the \_\_\_\_\_ pricing \_\_\_\_\_ (\_\_\_\_\_), which was developed by \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_ is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ pricing model that is based on the idea that \_\_\_\_\_ assets in \_\_\_\_\_ markets should be priced \_\_\_\_\_. APM states that an asset's \_\_\_\_\_ should \_\_\_\_\_ the investor for the \_\_\_\_\_ of the asset, where the \_\_\_\_\_ is due to a number of \_\_\_\_\_ influences, or \_\_\_\_\_ factors. The APM provides \_\_\_\_\_ support for an asset \_\_\_\_\_ model where there is more than one risk \_\_\_\_\_.



3. What two risks are closely associated with reinvestment risk? How do these risks contribute to reinvestment risk for the investor?

4. How does interest rate risk affect the valuation of bonds?

5. Explain the relationships among expected return, variance, and standard deviation.

## **PROBLEMS**

---

Refer to Chapter 10, pages 257–302 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. Home Decor Incorporated sells faux fur wallpaper for \$1,500 per roll. The rolls cost the firm \$30 to produce. The firm has fixed operating costs of \$175,000 and pays an annual interest expense on its debt of \$65,000.
  - a. Calculate Home Decor's degree of operating leverage at 10,000 units sold.

b. Calculate Home Decor's degree of financial leverage at 10,000 units sold.

c. Calculate Home Decor's degree of total leverage at 10,000 units sold.

d. Calculate Home Decor's break-even number of units produced and sold.

- e. If the sales volume were increased from 10,000 units to 15,000 units, by what percentage would the cash flow to shareholders increase?

6. Consider two investments with the following cash flows:

Economic Scenario	Probability of Economic Scenario	Possible Outcome for Investment 1	Possible Outcome for Investment 2
Boom	25%	\$2,000	\$1,500
Normal	40%	\$1,000	\$1,000
Bust	35%	\$500	\$857

- a. Calculate the expected value of each investment.

b. Calculate the standard deviation for each investment's possible outcomes.

c. Which investment is riskier?

4. Suppose the expected risk-free asset is 6% and the return on the market is 10%. Further suppose you have a portfolio comprised of the following securities with equal investments in each:

Security	Security Beta
A	0.85
B	1.00
C	1.25
D	1.50

a. What is the expected return for each security in the portfolio?

b. What is the portfolio's beta?

c. What is the expected return on the portfolio?

4. Given the following investments:

Economic Scenario	Probability of Economic Scenario	Possible Outcome for Investment 1	Possible Outcome for Investment 2
Boom	15%	18%	25%
Normal	30%	50%	45%
Bust	55%	40%	30%

a. Calculate the covariance between the two investments.

b. Calculate the correlation coefficient between the two investments.

c. What do these measures tell an investor?

# The Cost of Capital

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

Refer to Chapter 11, pages 307–347 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ is the return that must be provided for the use of an investor's \_\_\_\_\_. If the funds are \_\_\_\_\_, the \_\_\_\_\_ is related to the \_\_\_\_\_ that must be paid on the loan. If the funds are \_\_\_\_\_, the \_\_\_\_\_ is the \_\_\_\_\_ that investors expect, both from the stock's price \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. The cost of \_\_\_\_\_ is the same as the \_\_\_\_\_ rate of \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Capital \_\_\_\_\_ is the mix of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ stock, and \_\_\_\_\_ stock. It is the goal of the financial manager to estimate the \_\_\_\_\_ of each in order for the firm to issue new \_\_\_\_\_.

3. The \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_, which is the raising of one more \_\_\_\_\_ by issuing debt, is directly affected by the \_\_\_\_\_ tax \_\_\_\_\_, which provides the \_\_\_\_\_ rate on the next dollar of \_\_\_\_\_ income. Because \_\_\_\_\_ paid is deducted from \_\_\_\_\_ income, the \_\_\_\_\_ cost of debt is \_\_\_\_\_ than the stated cost.
4. When \_\_\_\_\_ securities and \_\_\_\_\_ are issued, \_\_\_\_\_ costs must be considered. These costs are \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and investment \_\_\_\_\_ who assist the firm in the issue. Also called \_\_\_\_\_ of debt, it drives \_\_\_\_\_ the cost of the issue.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ stock is the cost associated with raising one more \_\_\_\_\_ of capital by \_\_\_\_\_ shares of \_\_\_\_\_ stock. \_\_\_\_\_ stock may or may not have a(n) \_\_\_\_\_. If it does not have a(n) \_\_\_\_\_, then it is called \_\_\_\_\_ stock.
6. The \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ stock is the cost of raising one more dollar of \_\_\_\_\_ equity capital, either \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ generated capital comes from \_\_\_\_\_ earnings whereas \_\_\_\_\_ generated capital comes from issuing new \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ stock.

7. The \_\_\_\_\_ Model (\_\_\_\_\_) for valuing \_\_\_\_\_ stock states the \_\_\_\_\_ of a share of \_\_\_\_\_ is the \_\_\_\_\_ value of all its \_\_\_\_\_ cash \_\_\_\_\_ that are \_\_\_\_\_ at the \_\_\_\_\_ rate of \_\_\_\_\_ on \_\_\_\_\_. It is based on the assumption that \_\_\_\_\_ grow at a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ rate into the \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The \_\_\_\_\_ Model (\_\_\_\_\_) assumes investors hold \_\_\_\_\_ portfolios that are only subject to \_\_\_\_\_ risk. Investors are \_\_\_\_\_ for the \_\_\_\_\_ value of \_\_\_\_\_ and for the \_\_\_\_\_ they assume. The \_\_\_\_\_ for the \_\_\_\_\_ value of \_\_\_\_\_ is represented by the market \_\_\_\_\_ and the riskiness of the \_\_\_\_\_ is represented by \_\_\_\_\_.
9. The \_\_\_\_\_ budget implies that in order to \_\_\_\_\_ shareholder wealth, \_\_\_\_\_ in projects must be made until the \_\_\_\_\_ cost of \_\_\_\_\_ is \_\_\_\_\_ to its marginal \_\_\_\_\_. In other words, the \_\_\_\_\_ is the capital \_\_\_\_\_ where the \_\_\_\_\_ cost of \_\_\_\_\_ intersects the \_\_\_\_\_ rate of return, also known as the marginal \_\_\_\_\_ of capital.

**SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

Refer to Chapter 11, pages 307–347 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. Explain what is meant when it is said that the cost of capital and the required rate of return are marginal concepts.

2. How is the cost of capital determined?

3. Under what financial conditions is it appropriate to use the DVM? The CAPM?

## **PROBLEMS**

---

Refer to Chapter 11, pages 307–347 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. Tallahassee Trucking and Towing (TTT) wants to issue additional debt. Using the yield on their current debt as a guide for the cost of new debt, what is TTT's after-tax cost of debt? They currently have a 7% coupon bond paying interest semiannually that matures in five years and it has a current market price of \$90 or \$900 per \$1,000 face value bond.





---

Financing Arrangement	Percentage of New Capital Raised		
	Debt	Preferred Stock	Common Stock
1	30%	10%	60%
2	50%	25%	25%

---

## Capital Budgeting: Cash Flows

### FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

Refer to Chapter 12, pages 355–392 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. The financial manager's \_\_\_\_\_ is to maximize owners' \_\_\_\_\_. To accomplish this, the manager must evaluate \_\_\_\_\_ opportunities and determine which ones will add \_\_\_\_\_ to the firm. Firms continually \_\_\_\_\_ funds in \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ assets and these assets produce \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ flows that the firm can then either \_\_\_\_\_ in more assets or \_\_\_\_\_ to the owners.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ investment is the firm's investment in its \_\_\_\_\_ through the use of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ financing. The firm's \_\_\_\_\_ investment decision may be comprised of a number of distinct \_\_\_\_\_. Managers must evaluate a number of \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_ in making investment decisions, not only to \_\_\_\_\_ how much the firm's \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows will \_\_\_\_\_ if it invests in a project, but also the \_\_\_\_\_ associated with these \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows.

3. Cash flow \_\_\_\_\_ comes from two sources: \_\_\_\_\_ risk and \_\_\_\_\_ risk. \_\_\_\_\_ risk is the degree of \_\_\_\_\_ related to the number of units that will be \_\_\_\_\_ and the \_\_\_\_\_ of the good or service and \_\_\_\_\_ risk is the degree of \_\_\_\_\_ concerning \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows that arises from the particular \_\_\_\_\_ of fixed and variable \_\_\_\_\_ costs. The combination of the two risks is \_\_\_\_\_ risk and is reflected in the \_\_\_\_\_ rate, which is the rate of \_\_\_\_\_ required to compensate the suppliers of \_\_\_\_\_ for the amount of risk they bear, the \_\_\_\_\_ rate of return or, from the firm's perspective, the \_\_\_\_\_ of capital.

4. Capital \_\_\_\_\_ is the process of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ investments in \_\_\_\_\_ lived assets, or assets expected to produce \_\_\_\_\_ over more than \_\_\_\_\_ year. Because a firm must continually evaluate possible investments, capital \_\_\_\_\_ is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ process. However, before a firm begins thinking about capital \_\_\_\_\_, it must first determine its corporate \_\_\_\_\_—its broad set of \_\_\_\_\_ for future investment.

5. Projects are classified by the \_\_\_\_\_ of the project life, the \_\_\_\_\_, and the \_\_\_\_\_ on other projects. The \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ life of an asset is an estimate of the \_\_\_\_\_ of time that the asset will provide \_\_\_\_\_ to the firm. The investment's \_\_\_\_\_ of return can be classified according to the \_\_\_\_\_ of the project represented by the investment. The degree of \_\_\_\_\_ on other projects is classified as follows: \_\_\_\_\_ projects, \_\_\_\_\_ projects, \_\_\_\_\_ projects, and \_\_\_\_\_ projects.
6. The \_\_\_\_\_ between the cash flows of the firm \_\_\_\_\_ the investment project and the cash flows of the firm \_\_\_\_\_ the investment project, both over the same period of time, is the project's \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows. A more useful way of evaluating the \_\_\_\_\_ in the value is the breakdown of the project's cash flows into two \_\_\_\_\_: \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows and \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows, which are the \_\_\_\_\_ needed to \_\_\_\_\_ the project's assets and any cash flows from \_\_\_\_\_ of the project's assets.
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ form of investment is a cash \_\_\_\_\_ when the asset is \_\_\_\_\_ and there may be either a cash \_\_\_\_\_ or a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ at the end of its \_\_\_\_\_ life. In most cases these are not the only cash flows—the investment may result in changes in \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_

capital. These are \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows as they result directly from the day-to-day activities of the firm.

8. The effect \_\_\_\_\_ has on taxes is called the \_\_\_\_\_. Because it reduces taxable income, depreciation reduces the tax \_\_\_\_\_, which amounts to a cash \_\_\_\_\_. For tax purposes, firms are permitted to use \_\_\_\_\_ depreciation or \_\_\_\_\_ depreciation. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ method is preferred in most situations because it results in \_\_\_\_\_ deductions \_\_\_\_\_ in the asset's life than using \_\_\_\_\_ depreciation.

9. \_\_\_\_\_ value is \_\_\_\_\_ considered in calculating \_\_\_\_\_. Instead, it is our best \_\_\_\_\_ today of what the \_\_\_\_\_ will be \_\_\_\_\_ at the end of its \_\_\_\_\_ life some time in the future. \_\_\_\_\_ value is our estimate of how much we can get when we \_\_\_\_\_ of the asset.

**SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

Refer to Chapter 12, pages 355–392 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. List and describe the five stages of the capital budgeting process.

2. Compare the investment decisions in short-term assets versus long-term assets.

3. Explain the difference between independent, mutually exclusive, contingent, and complementary projects.

4. What are the cash flows that comprise an investment?

### **PROBLEMS**

---

Refer to Chapter 12, pages 355–392 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. An asset is purchased for \$10,000. It is classified as five-year property and will be depreciated using the straight-line method. The asset has no salvage value and is

expected to increase revenues by \$15,000 a year and expenses by \$8,000 a year. If the tax rate is 30%, determine the cash flows from asset acquisition, asset disposition, and operating cash flows.

2. The Cookies-R-Us bakery is considering the purchase of an additional cookie press for \$49,000. It is classified as a seven-year property and will be depreciated using straight-line depreciation. The addition of the press is expected to increase revenues by \$18,000 a year and cash operating expenses by \$5,000 a year. The salvage value is \$10,000 at the end of seven years. If the tax rate is 25%, determine the cash flows from asset acquisition, asset disposition, and operating cash flows.

3. A new piece of equipment will cost a firm \$20,000 to purchase and \$8,000 to install and make it adaptable to the firm's specific needs. In addition, \$2,000 investment in spare parts inventory will be maintained to prevent downtime. The equipment has a seven-year life and will be depreciated using the straight-line method. It is expected to have a salvage value of \$5,000 at the end of seven years. It will have no effect on revenues but is expected to decrease expenses by \$3,000 a year through cost efficiencies. Determine the cash flows from asset acquisition, asset disposition, and operating cash flows.

**Capital Budgeting Techniques****FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

Refer to Chapter 13, pages 399–444 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ of capital is what the firm must \_\_\_\_\_ for the funds needed to \_\_\_\_\_ an investment. The \_\_\_\_\_ of capital may be a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ cost, such as the \_\_\_\_\_ paid on debt, or a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ cost, such as the expected \_\_\_\_\_ appreciation of shares of the firm's \_\_\_\_\_ stock, or the \_\_\_\_\_ required by the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ to compensate them for the time \_\_\_\_\_ of money and the \_\_\_\_\_ associated with the investment. The more \_\_\_\_\_ the future cash flows, the \_\_\_\_\_ the cost of capital.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ period for a project is the \_\_\_\_\_ of time it takes to get your \_\_\_\_\_ back. It is the period from the \_\_\_\_\_ cash \_\_\_\_\_ to the

time when the project's cash \_\_\_\_\_ add up to the \_\_\_\_\_ cash \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_ period is also referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_ period or the capital \_\_\_\_\_ period.

3. The \_\_\_\_\_ period is the time needed to \_\_\_\_\_ back the \_\_\_\_\_ investment in terms of \_\_\_\_\_ future cash flows, therefore the \_\_\_\_\_ period is \_\_\_\_\_ for \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows than for \_\_\_\_\_ flows that are not \_\_\_\_\_.
  
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ value (\_\_\_\_\_) is the present value of all \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows. The term \_\_\_\_\_ is used because we want to determine the \_\_\_\_\_ between the \_\_\_\_\_ in the operating cash flows and the investment cash flows. Often \_\_\_\_\_ in operating cash flows are \_\_\_\_\_ and the \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows are \_\_\_\_\_, hence the reference to the \_\_\_\_\_ as the \_\_\_\_\_ between the present value of the cash \_\_\_\_\_ and the present value of the cash \_\_\_\_\_.
  
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ technique considers all expected \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows, the \_\_\_\_\_ of money and the \_\_\_\_\_ of the \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows. Evaluating projects using \_\_\_\_\_ will lead us to select the ones that \_\_\_\_\_ owners'

- wealth. The \_\_\_\_\_ technique also allows you to \_\_\_\_\_ the effect of \_\_\_\_\_ in cost of capital on a project's \_\_\_\_\_.
6. A project's \_\_\_\_\_ profile, also referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_ profile, shows how \_\_\_\_\_ changes as the \_\_\_\_\_ rate changes. The \_\_\_\_\_ profile is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ depiction of the relation between the \_\_\_\_\_ of a project and the \_\_\_\_\_ rate. It shows the \_\_\_\_\_ of a project for a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ rates.
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ (\_\_\_\_\_) is the ratio of the present value of change in \_\_\_\_\_ cash \_\_\_\_\_ to the present value of \_\_\_\_\_ cash \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_ is often referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_ ratio, as it is the ratio of the \_\_\_\_\_ from an investment to its \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_ tells us how much value we get for each dollar invested.
8. An investment's \_\_\_\_\_ of return (\_\_\_\_\_) is the \_\_\_\_\_ rate that makes the present value of all expected \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows equal to \_\_\_\_\_; or, in other words, the \_\_\_\_\_ is the \_\_\_\_\_ rate that causes \_\_\_\_\_ to equal \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_ is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_—what is earned, on average, per year. When evaluating \_\_\_\_\_



3. When should PI be used? When should it not be used?

4. What is the difference between the IRR and MIRR? Why is using IRR or MIRR sometimes not appropriate?

5. Of all the capital budgeting techniques, which one is the best evaluation technique? Which techniques do managers most prefer in practice?

## PROBLEMS

---

Refer to Chapter 13, pages 399–444 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. You are the manager and are considering the following two projects for investment:

	Year 0	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3
Project A	(\$10,000)	\$3,000	\$7,000	\$9,000
Project B	(\$5,000)	\$3,000	\$4,000	\$5,000



c. Calculate the NPV of each project.

d. Calculate the PI of each project.

e. Calculate the IRR of each project.

f. Calculate the MIRR of each project assuming a reinvestment rate of 10%.

g. If the projects are independent, which should be undertaken?

h. If the projects are mutually exclusive, which one should be undertaken?



## Capital Budgeting and Risk

### FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

Refer to Chapter 14, pages 451–481 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. Uncertainty arises from different sources, depending on the type of \_\_\_\_\_ being considered, as well as the circumstances and the \_\_\_\_\_ in which it is operating. Such circumstances include \_\_\_\_\_ conditions, \_\_\_\_\_ conditions, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ rates, and \_\_\_\_\_ conditions.
2. The sources of \_\_\_\_\_ influence \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows when \_\_\_\_\_ the risk of a capital project. Therefore, there is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ cost to consider: what the suppliers of capital could \_\_\_\_\_ elsewhere for the \_\_\_\_\_ level of \_\_\_\_\_. This is the required \_\_\_\_\_ or cost of \_\_\_\_\_ and it contains the \_\_\_\_\_ return necessary to \_\_\_\_\_ investors for the risk they bear, called the \_\_\_\_\_ premium.

3. A project's \_\_\_\_\_ in isolation from the firm's other \_\_\_\_\_ is also referred to as the project's \_\_\_\_\_ risk or \_\_\_\_\_ risk. Because most firms have many \_\_\_\_\_, the \_\_\_\_\_ risk of a project under consideration may not be the \_\_\_\_\_ risk for analysis. A firm is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of assets, and the \_\_\_\_\_ of these different assets are not perfectly, positively \_\_\_\_\_ with one another. The real concern is with the \_\_\_\_\_ of the project to the firm's \_\_\_\_\_ of assets and how it changes the \_\_\_\_\_ of the firm's \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Three \_\_\_\_\_ measures are used to evaluate the \_\_\_\_\_ associated with a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ possible outcomes: the \_\_\_\_\_, the \_\_\_\_\_, and the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_. The more \_\_\_\_\_ or spread out the possible outcomes, the \_\_\_\_\_ the degree of \_\_\_\_\_ or risk of what is expected in the future.
5. In attempting to assess risk, it is important to perform analyses of the \_\_\_\_\_ of cash flows to \_\_\_\_\_ in the assumptions by \_\_\_\_\_ the cash flows for different \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ analysis, also called \_\_\_\_\_ analysis or \_\_\_\_\_ analysis, is a method of looking at the possible \_\_\_\_\_, given a change in only \_\_\_\_\_ of the factors at a time.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ analysis provides a manageable approach to changing \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ factors at the \_\_\_\_\_ time. It is \_\_\_\_\_ simulation by developing a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ distribution of possible \_\_\_\_\_, given a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ distribution for each \_\_\_\_\_ that may \_\_\_\_\_. With the help of a computer simulation program, \_\_\_\_\_ can be performed calculating \_\_\_\_\_ of return that yield a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ distribution of the \_\_\_\_\_ on investments.
7. An alternative approach that applies \_\_\_\_\_ methods to \_\_\_\_\_ assets, known as \_\_\_\_\_ valuation (\_\_\_\_\_), considers the value of a project that extends \_\_\_\_\_ its value as measured by the \_\_\_\_\_, meaning the value of project is \_\_\_\_\_ by the value of \_\_\_\_\_ inherent in an investment opportunity. These \_\_\_\_\_ are to \_\_\_\_\_ the project, though there may be constraints (e.g., legally binding contracts) that affect when this option can be \_\_\_\_\_, the option to \_\_\_\_\_, and the option to \_\_\_\_\_ investment to some \_\_\_\_\_ date. Because the options are \_\_\_\_\_ decisions, the \_\_\_\_\_ net present value is referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_ NPV.
8. The \_\_\_\_\_ of stock options is rather complex, but with the assistance of models such as the \_\_\_\_\_ model, option values can be estimated. The \_\_\_\_\_ option pricing model contains \_\_\_\_\_ factors that

are important in the \_\_\_\_\_ of an option. The most \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ factor to measure, the \_\_\_\_\_ of the value of the underlying asset, directly affects \_\_\_\_\_ key elements of the \_\_\_\_\_ value in that the greater the \_\_\_\_\_, the greater the \_\_\_\_\_ of the option and the greater the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_, which lowers the \_\_\_\_\_ NPV.

9. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ equivalent is the \_\_\_\_\_ cash flow that is considered to be \_\_\_\_\_ to the \_\_\_\_\_ cash flow. The \_\_\_\_\_ equivalent \_\_\_\_\_ of incorporating \_\_\_\_\_ into the net present value analysis is useful because it \_\_\_\_\_ the time \_\_\_\_\_ of money and \_\_\_\_\_, allows each \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows to be adjusted separately for \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ for risk can be \_\_\_\_\_. It is difficult to apply as the \_\_\_\_\_ value of the certainty equivalent is not easily \_\_\_\_\_ and there is no \_\_\_\_\_ way of determining the certainty equivalent value for each \_\_\_\_\_ cash flow.

10. Considering the use of a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ cost of \_\_\_\_\_ and/or similar \_\_\_\_\_ for all projects can be hazardous. When \_\_\_\_\_ the various \_\_\_\_\_ capital \_\_\_\_\_ techniques, it may result in the \_\_\_\_\_ of profitable projects that have risk below the risk of the average risk project because of \_\_\_\_\_ future cash flows, and





5. How is a firm's cost of capital generally determined?

## **PROBLEMS**

---

Refer to Chapter 14, pages 451–481 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. ABC Company's cost of capital is 15% and uses equity financing. It is investigating the possibility of investing in a project that is different from its line of business. ABC has identified a pure play firm, DEF, Inc., for that particular project that has an equity beta of 1.36. DEF has a 45% debt to equity ratio and has a 35% marginal tax rate. What rate of return should ABC use to evaluate taking on the project if the relevant risk-free rate is 5.5% and the market risk premium is 12%?

2. Consider the following cash flows for Projects A and B.

Project A		Project B	
Probability	Cash Flow	Probability	Cash Flow
0.25	\$1,300	0.30	\$3,000
0.40	\$1,500	0.25	-\$1,000
0.35	\$800	0.45	\$1,500

a. What are the cash flows range for each project?

b. What is the expected cash flow for each project?

c. What is the standard deviation of the possible cash flows for each project?

d. What is the coefficient of variation for each project?

e. Assume a firm is trying to decide between these two projects and uses a 13% required rate of return to evaluate all the projects having a coefficient of variation of less than 0.5 and an 18% required rate for those projects with coefficients greater than 0.5. Project A requires an initial outlay of \$2,000, whereas Project B costs \$1,000. Each project is expected to have a five-year life. Which project should be undertaken if the projects are mutually exclusive?

- f. Conduct a sensitivity analysis on Project B making each of the following changes:
- Change the discount rate to 19%.





**Intermediate and Long-Term Debt****FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

Refer to Chapter 15, pages 487–527 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. The amount borrowed in a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is called the \_\_\_\_\_ and is repaid either at the \_\_\_\_\_ of the period or at regular \_\_\_\_\_ during this period. The \_\_\_\_\_ or note holder or \_\_\_\_\_ receives \_\_\_\_\_ as compensation. For some types of debt the \_\_\_\_\_ is paid periodically, and for other types is paid at the \_\_\_\_\_ of the debt period. The interest rate can be a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ rate or a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ rate which is popularly referred to as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ rate.
2. Debt backed by \_\_\_\_\_ is called \_\_\_\_\_ debt and the property is \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_. If there is no security, the creditor relies entirely on the \_\_\_\_\_ of the borrower to make

- the promised \_\_\_\_\_; therefore this type of debt is \_\_\_\_\_ or a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ loans are negotiated directly between \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, where the \_\_\_\_\_ is typically a commercial \_\_\_\_\_, a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ company, or a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ company. \_\_\_\_\_ loans range in \_\_\_\_\_ from two to ten years, though any repayment term is possible as long as it is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ term, or \_\_\_\_\_ maturity, as opposed to a loan that is payable on \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Bonds may be either \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_. For \_\_\_\_\_ bonds, the issuer maintains \_\_\_\_\_ of who owns them and sends any \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ to the \_\_\_\_\_ owners. For \_\_\_\_\_ bonds, physical \_\_\_\_\_ of the \_\_\_\_\_ entities the receiver to the \_\_\_\_\_. If \_\_\_\_\_ is payable, the \_\_\_\_\_ simply clips a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ attached to the certificate and sends it in or \_\_\_\_\_ it at a specified bank.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ feature of a convertible bond gives the investor the right to \_\_\_\_\_ the bond for some other \_\_\_\_\_, typically shares of \_\_\_\_\_, at a predetermined rate of exchange. The \_\_\_\_\_ should hold the bond until it becomes

\_\_\_\_\_ to convert it into shares of stock. It won't be worth converting unless the \_\_\_\_\_ of the shares of stock \_\_\_\_\_.

6. Organizations that \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ the likelihood of debt \_\_\_\_\_ and make the information available to the public are \_\_\_\_\_ agencies. The most popular agencies are \_\_\_\_\_ Service, \_\_\_\_\_ Corporation, and \_\_\_\_\_. The debt or \_\_\_\_\_ ratings are important for the \_\_\_\_\_ of and \_\_\_\_\_ of debt. Many banks, pension funds, and governmental bodies are \_\_\_\_\_ from investing in securities that do not have a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ credit rating. Because investors want to be compensated for \_\_\_\_\_, the \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_ risk associated with debt, represented by \_\_\_\_\_ ratings, the \_\_\_\_\_ the yield on debt demanded by investors, which means the \_\_\_\_\_ the cost of raising funds via debt.

7. In all \_\_\_\_\_ systems, the term \_\_\_\_\_ grade means \_\_\_\_\_ default risk, or conversely, \_\_\_\_\_ probability of future payments. In general, \_\_\_\_\_ bonds carry the highest-grade or \_\_\_\_\_ ratings that are designated by a symbol of triple \_\_\_\_\_ through triple \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ bonds are those bonds rated below triple \_\_\_\_\_ and are also called \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ bonds.

8. \_\_\_\_\_ agencies consider the four Cs of \_\_\_\_\_: \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ of management includes the \_\_\_\_\_ reputation and \_\_\_\_\_ of management. \_\_\_\_\_ is the ability of an issuer to \_\_\_\_\_ its obligations. Collateral is the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ that are pledged to secure debt. \_\_\_\_\_ are the binding \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ of the lending agreement.

9. Firms seeking to raise \_\_\_\_\_ with \_\_\_\_\_ offerings want to issue securities with the \_\_\_\_\_ cost and the flexibility to \_\_\_\_\_ the debt if interest rates \_\_\_\_\_. Investors want securities that provide the \_\_\_\_\_ yield, \_\_\_\_\_ risk, and the flexibility to \_\_\_\_\_ if other, more profitable investment opportunities arise. The best package of \_\_\_\_\_ features will provide both what investors are looking for and what the firm is willing to offer. Today, this is available through the use of \_\_\_\_\_ instruments because issuers can \_\_\_\_\_ create \_\_\_\_\_-rate or \_\_\_\_\_-rate bonds by using \_\_\_\_\_ rate, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, or \_\_\_\_\_ based swaps.

**SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

Refer to Chapter 15, pages 487–527 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. How is the interest rate on debt determined and how is it reset for floating rates?

2. Describe and discuss the difference between a fully amortizing loan and a bullet loan.

3. What is the difference between a note and a bond?

4. Describe the basic provisions of a bond issue.

---

5. How would a bond be called or retired prior to maturity?  
Why would this happen?

6. What is the difference between a convertible bond and a bond with a warrant option?



- 
- b. If the common stock is currently selling for \$35 a share, what is the bond's market conversion price?
- c. What is the effective conversion price of the bond?
- d. The bond is callable at \$1,800. Should an investor accept the call or convert the bond into common stock? Why?

- 
3. CVQ Inc., has issued \$100 million of 8% coupon bonds. Each has a warrant that entitles the owner to buy a share of the common stock of CVQ for \$20 a share.
- a. If the current market price of CVQ is \$33 a share, what is the minimum price you would pay for the warrant?
- b. The warrant has five years until expiration. How will this affect the price you would be willing to pay for the warrant?
4. KLH Company currently has \$12 million of 10% coupon bonds outstanding. The bonds pay interest semiannually, they have a face value of \$1,000 each, and have eight years remaining to maturity. The bonds are callable at 105 and are trading to yield 6%. KLH's marginal tax rate is 25%.

---

a. What is the total market value of the outstanding bonds?

b. Should KLH buy the bonds in the open market or call in the bonds at this point in time? Why?



**Common Stock****FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

Refer to Chapter 16, pages 533–566 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. We refer to the equity of a corporation as \_\_\_\_\_. A corporation's stock may be divided into two major types: \_\_\_\_\_ stock and \_\_\_\_\_ stock. Each of these classes is split into smaller pieces called \_\_\_\_\_, represented by stock \_\_\_\_\_. Owners of these shares are referred to as \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_. Shareholders receive part of the \_\_\_\_\_ on their investment from \_\_\_\_\_, which are periodic \_\_\_\_\_ payments from the corporation.
2. There are a number of characteristics of \_\_\_\_\_ stock that are important in the financial manager's capital structure decision and that affect investors' decisions regarding common stock as an investment. These characteristics include: limited \_\_\_\_\_, the number of

\_\_\_\_\_, stock \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ stock, \_\_\_\_\_ rights, and the right to \_\_\_\_\_ more stock.

3. The number of \_\_\_\_\_ a firm can issue is referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_ shares. If a firm wishes to issue more shares, it does \_\_\_\_\_ have to issue the entire number of shares authorized. The number of \_\_\_\_\_ shares is the number of shares \_\_\_\_\_ sold and is equal to or \_\_\_\_\_ than the number of \_\_\_\_\_ shares. If a firm buys back stock from investors, the number of shares \_\_\_\_\_ in the hands of investors—referred to as \_\_\_\_\_ shares—is fewer than the number of \_\_\_\_\_ shares. Shares bought back from investors may be either \_\_\_\_\_, reducing the number of issued shares, or held as \_\_\_\_\_ stock.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ shareholders are generally granted rights to \_\_\_\_\_ members of the board of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ on the \_\_\_\_\_ of the corporation with another corporation, \_\_\_\_\_ additional shares of common stock, and \_\_\_\_\_ on \_\_\_\_\_ to the articles of incorporation. Different \_\_\_\_\_ of stock may have different numbers of \_\_\_\_\_ per share, or different classes as a whole may have specified \_\_\_\_\_ of the votes. The different classes can be used by \_\_\_\_\_ groups to \_\_\_\_\_ control of the company.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ voting is designed to allow \_\_\_\_\_ shareholders to gain representation on the board. With \_\_\_\_\_ voting, shareholders can \_\_\_\_\_ their votes for members of the board of directors. Cumulative voting allows shareholders to \_\_\_\_\_ up their votes for one or more \_\_\_\_\_, leading to more active participation in the corporation's \_\_\_\_\_, especially by shareholders with \_\_\_\_\_ holdings.
6. Some corporations have divided their director positions into classes, where only \_\_\_\_\_ class of directors is voted on each year, instead of the \_\_\_\_\_ board. This system is referred to as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ board of directors or a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ board of directors. The \_\_\_\_\_ of this system is that, by staggering terms there is \_\_\_\_\_ in the board of directors. Having multiyear terms insures that there are \_\_\_\_\_ members of the board and allows the board as a group to work on projects or issues that extend beyond \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Corporations can give the right to buy \_\_\_\_\_ shares of new \_\_\_\_\_ stock through a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ offering which is an offering of \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ shareholders to purchase shares in order to \_\_\_\_\_ their current \_\_\_\_\_ in the company.

8. The board of \_\_\_\_\_ may declare a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ at any time, but dividends are not a legal \_\_\_\_\_ of the corporation. Most dividends are in the form of \_\_\_\_\_. In addition to cash dividends, the corporation may provide shareholders with dividends in the form of additional \_\_\_\_\_ of stock or, rarely, other types of \_\_\_\_\_ owned by the corporation.
9. Many U.S. corporations allow shareholders to automatically \_\_\_\_\_ their dividends in the \_\_\_\_\_ of the corporation paying them. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ reinvestment plan (\_\_\_\_\_) is a program that allows \_\_\_\_\_ to reinvest their \_\_\_\_\_, buying \_\_\_\_\_ shares of stock of the company instead of receiving the \_\_\_\_\_ dividend. These \_\_\_\_\_ shares representing dividends reinvested may be currently \_\_\_\_\_ or newly \_\_\_\_\_.
10. A stock \_\_\_\_\_ is something like a stock dividend. A stock split \_\_\_\_\_ the number of \_\_\_\_\_ shares into \_\_\_\_\_ shares however the \_\_\_\_\_ of ownership has not changed. Aside from a minor difference in accounting, stock splits and stock dividends are essentially the \_\_\_\_\_. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ stock split, \_\_\_\_\_ the price of a stock by \_\_\_\_\_ the number of shares of stock.

11. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ policy is a firm's \_\_\_\_\_ about the payment of \_\_\_\_\_ dividends to shareholders. There are several basic ways of describing a firm's dividend policy: \_\_\_\_\_ dividends, constant \_\_\_\_\_ in dividends per share, constant \_\_\_\_\_ ratio, and \_\_\_\_\_ dividends with \_\_\_\_\_ extra dividends. Several views that attempt to explain why dividends are paid are: the Dividend \_\_\_\_\_ Theory, the "\_\_\_\_\_ in the Hand" Theory, the \_\_\_\_\_ Explanation, the \_\_\_\_\_ Explanation, and the \_\_\_\_\_ Explanation.

12. A corporation \_\_\_\_\_ its own shares is effectively paying a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ dividend, with one important difference: \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ dividends are \_\_\_\_\_ taxable income to the shareholder. A firm's \_\_\_\_\_ of shares, on the other hand, results in a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ gain or loss for the shareholder, depending on the \_\_\_\_\_ paid when they were originally purchased. If the shares are repurchased at a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ price, the difference may be taxed as capital \_\_\_\_\_, which may be taxed at rates \_\_\_\_\_ than ordinary income.

**SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

Refer to Chapter 16, pages 533–566 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. Exactly what is a shareholder buying when shares are purchased?

2. What is the difference between preferred stock and common stock?

---

3. What is common equity and how is it created?

4. What does it mean when corporations are classified as publicly held, privately held, or closely held?

5. Why would a company pay a dividend?

6. Explain the time line for issuing dividends.

7. Why would a company do a reverse stock split?

8. Why would a company repurchase its own stock and how would it go about doing so?

**PROBLEMS**

---

Refer to Chapter 16, pages 533–566 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. ABC Corporation has 1.3 million common shares outstanding and total earnings of \$2.4 million. The firm paid dividends totaling \$550,000. The firm has no preferred stock.

a. What were the dividends per share paid by ABC?

b. What was ABC's dividend payout ratio?

2. Pricee stock sells for \$275 per share and you own 300 shares.

a. What is the current market value of your investment?

b. What is the new price per share, new amount of shares you will own, and the new market value of your investment if the firm declares a 3 for 1 stock split? If the firm declares a 15% stock dividend?

3. You currently own 500 shares of XYZ Company. There are four board positions up for election. How many votes can you cast for your favorite candidate, Ms. W, if the ordinary voting procedure is used? How many can you cast for Ms. W if cumulative voting is used?

# Preferred Stock

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

Refer to Chapter 17, pages 571–580 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. Like common stock, \_\_\_\_\_ stock also represents equity. \_\_\_\_\_ shareholders have a claim on \_\_\_\_\_ and assets ahead of that of \_\_\_\_\_ shareholders. If the business is liquidated and all the assets sold and the proceeds used to pay off all the creditors, then the \_\_\_\_\_ shareholders get what is owed to them before \_\_\_\_\_ shareholders. While few corporations are actually liquidated, this \_\_\_\_\_ claim provides \_\_\_\_\_ shareholders with an advantage in the reorganization of firms in distress or bankruptcy.
2. Almost all firms must pay their specified \_\_\_\_\_ dividend. When dividends are paid, \_\_\_\_\_ dividends must be paid \_\_\_\_\_; what remains may be paid as dividends to \_\_\_\_\_ shareholders. Most preferred share \_\_\_\_\_ are paid in \_\_\_\_\_,

although some are in the form of \_\_\_\_\_ of stock. Most \_\_\_\_\_ dividends are paid \_\_\_\_\_ and may be paid at either a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ rate per period.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ dividends are expressed as either a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of the par value or a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ dollar amount per period. For \_\_\_\_\_ dividends, the dividend rate on a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ preferred stock is typically fixed \_\_\_\_\_ and based on the dividend \_\_\_\_\_ spread. Most adjustable-rate preferred stock is \_\_\_\_\_, with a(n) \_\_\_\_\_. From the perspective of the \_\_\_\_\_, a collar's maximum ensures that the \_\_\_\_\_ of financing with preferred stock are \_\_\_\_\_; from the perspective of the \_\_\_\_\_, a collar's minimum ensures that the \_\_\_\_\_ on the preferred stock has a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ limit.
  
4. The dividend rate on \_\_\_\_\_ preferred stock is set \_\_\_\_\_, as with adjustable-rate preferred stock, but it is established through an auction process. \_\_\_\_\_ preferred stock is preferred stock where the dividend rate is determined periodically by a remarketing \_\_\_\_\_ who resets the dividend rate so that any preferred stock can be \_\_\_\_\_ at par and be resold at the original \_\_\_\_\_ price. Typically, a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ has the choice of dividend \_\_\_\_\_ every seven days or every 49 days. Since the mid-1980s, \_\_\_\_\_ preferred stock and

\_\_\_\_\_ preferred stock have become the dominant type of preferred stock issued.

5. With \_\_\_\_\_ preferred stock, any \_\_\_\_\_ not paid in one period must be paid the next period \_\_\_\_\_ any other dividend for that class of preferred stock is paid and before any \_\_\_\_\_ stock dividend is paid. With \_\_\_\_\_ preferred stock, any dividend not paid in a period is \_\_\_\_\_ paid in any other period—it is simply \_\_\_\_\_ and does not affect the dividend in any \_\_\_\_\_ period. If a preferred stock dividend is \_\_\_\_\_, any dividend passed over in one period is carried over year to year. The passed over dividend is referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_ and the preferred stock dividend is said to be in \_\_\_\_\_. Most preferred stock issued in the United States is \_\_\_\_\_ preferred stock.

6. The market \_\_\_\_\_ price or \_\_\_\_\_ value is the market value of the \_\_\_\_\_ stock the investor would have if the \_\_\_\_\_ stock is exchanged with the \_\_\_\_\_ stock. The market conversion \_\_\_\_\_ is the conversion \_\_\_\_\_ multiplied by the market \_\_\_\_\_ of a share of \_\_\_\_\_ stock. If the market value of the convertible \_\_\_\_\_ stock exceeds the conversion value, we refer to this difference as the conversion \_\_\_\_\_.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ preferred stock gives the issuer the right to \_\_\_\_\_ it from the \_\_\_\_\_ at a predetermined price. If the issuing corporation wants to buy back the stock by using the call, they pay the specified call \_\_\_\_\_. The call \_\_\_\_\_ may be a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ amount forever, or may \_\_\_\_\_ according to a preset \_\_\_\_\_. The call price is generally \_\_\_\_\_ than or equal to the \_\_\_\_\_ or par value of the stock.
8. Because there is no legal \_\_\_\_\_ to pay the preferred dividend and because \_\_\_\_\_ and other \_\_\_\_\_ take precedence if the firm is liquidated, a corporation can provide this \_\_\_\_\_ in the form of a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ fund provision. Funds are deposited with a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ who uses these \_\_\_\_\_ to periodically \_\_\_\_\_ preferred stock, buying it from shareholders at a specified price, the \_\_\_\_\_ fund call price. The trustee retires \_\_\_\_\_ stock periodically and the firm is better able to meet the \_\_\_\_\_ payments on the remaining preferred shares.
9. A corporation may combine any of the previously described \_\_\_\_\_ into its preferred stock \_\_\_\_\_. If they hope to sell their preferred shares, they must package them in a way that is \_\_\_\_\_ to investors and at a reasonable \_\_\_\_\_. Features that give the \_\_\_\_\_ flexibility, such as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ feature, and features that give the

\_\_\_\_\_ something of additional value, such as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ feature, must be balanced in order to obtain an optimal cost for the package. Packaging a new issue of preferred stock requires considering investors' need for greater \_\_\_\_\_ and lower \_\_\_\_\_ and the issuer's need for greater \_\_\_\_\_ and lower \_\_\_\_\_.

### **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

Refer to Chapter 17, pages 571–580 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. What is participating preferred stock and why are there few of these issues?

2. Explain the differences between convertible preferred stock and mandatory convertible preferred stock. Which are preferred by investors and which by issuers?

3. Are there voting rights attached to preferred stock?





3. KLM Company issued \$3 million of 9.75% \$80 par preferred shares in 2001. Calculate the total amount of dividends paid on this issue per year and the annual amount of the dividends per share.



# Capital Structure

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

Refer to Chapter 18, pages 583–621 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. The combination of \_\_\_\_\_ and equity used to \_\_\_\_\_ a firm's projects is referred to as its \_\_\_\_\_ structure. The \_\_\_\_\_ structure of a firm is some mix of debt, internally generated \_\_\_\_\_, and new \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Failure to pay \_\_\_\_\_ or principal as promised may result in \_\_\_\_\_ distress. \_\_\_\_\_ distress is the condition where a firm makes \_\_\_\_\_ under pressure to satisfy its legal obligations to its \_\_\_\_\_. These decisions may \_\_\_\_\_ be in the best interest of the owners of the firm.
3. When \_\_\_\_\_ financing is used instead of \_\_\_\_\_, the owners don't share the earnings, all they must do is pay their \_\_\_\_\_ the interest on

debt. But when \_\_\_\_\_ financing is used instead of \_\_\_\_\_, the owners must \_\_\_\_\_ the increased earnings with the additional owners, diluting their \_\_\_\_\_ on equity and \_\_\_\_\_ per share.

4. We can measure the \_\_\_\_\_ associated with alternative forms of financing by calculating the \_\_\_\_\_ deviation and the \_\_\_\_\_ of variation of the possible earnings per share. The \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_ deviation and \_\_\_\_\_ of variation the \_\_\_\_\_ the risk.
5. The discount \_\_\_\_\_ is referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_ rate, which is the \_\_\_\_\_ rate that translates \_\_\_\_\_ earnings into a current \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_ rate reflects the uncertainty associated with the expected earnings in the \_\_\_\_\_. The more \_\_\_\_\_ the future earnings, the \_\_\_\_\_ a dollar of future income is worth today and the \_\_\_\_\_ the capitalization rate.
6. The risk \_\_\_\_\_ is the difference between the \_\_\_\_\_ rate for the net \_\_\_\_\_ to owners and the \_\_\_\_\_ rate on \_\_\_\_\_ to creditors (the \_\_\_\_\_), which is assumed to be risk \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_ the use of \_\_\_\_\_, the \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_ premium.

7. The benefit from interest deductibility is referred to as the interest \_\_\_\_\_. It is equal to the \_\_\_\_\_ tax rate times the interest \_\_\_\_\_. An alternative calculation is the \_\_\_\_\_ tax rate times the \_\_\_\_\_ rate on debt times the face \_\_\_\_\_ of debt.
8. If a firm has deductions that \_\_\_\_\_ income, the result is a net \_\_\_\_\_ loss. The firm does not have to pay \_\_\_\_\_ in the year of the \_\_\_\_\_ and may carry this \_\_\_\_\_ to another tax year. This \_\_\_\_\_ may be applied against \_\_\_\_\_ years' taxable \_\_\_\_\_, with some limits.
9. For firms whose owners have \_\_\_\_\_ liability, the more the \_\_\_\_\_ are financed with \_\_\_\_\_, the greater the incentive to take on \_\_\_\_\_ projects, leaving \_\_\_\_\_ "holding the bag" if the projects turn out to be \_\_\_\_\_. There is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of interest between \_\_\_\_\_ interests and \_\_\_\_\_ interests.
10. We can classify \_\_\_\_\_ costs into \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ costs. \_\_\_\_\_ costs include the legal, administrative, and \_\_\_\_\_ costs associated with the filing for bankruptcy and the administration of bankruptcy. The \_\_\_\_\_ costs of bankruptcy are more \_\_\_\_\_ to evaluate.



---

3. What is the leverage effect? What happens if earnings are insufficient to cover interest payments?

4. How does the tax shield affect the value of the firm?

5. What is the relationship between financial distress and capital structure? What are the factors to be considered?

6. What factors should be taken into consideration in capital structure decisions?



3. Finance-R-Us is considering three possible financing arrangements to raise \$1 million of new capital. Currently, the capital structure consists of no debt and \$250,000 in equity. There are 100,000 shares of common stock currently outstanding, selling at \$2.50 per share. Expected earnings of \$200,000, before interest and taxes, are expected for next period. The interest rate on any debt obtained should be 10%. Calculate the earnings to owners, earnings per share, and the distribution of income between creditors, shareholders, and the government for the following three alternatives:

- Alternative 1: Finance with only new equity.

---

- Alternative 2: Finance using 50% debt and 50% equity.

- Alternative 3: Finance using only new debt.

4. The O.K. Company has \$100,000 of debt in its capital structure. The interest rate on this debt is 12%. What is the present value of the tax shield from interest deductibility if the corporate tax rate on income is 35%?

## Management of Cash and Marketable Securities

### **FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

Refer to Chapter 19, pages 627–648 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ cycle in part determines how long it takes for a firm to \_\_\_\_\_ cash from its short-term \_\_\_\_\_ and, therefore, the \_\_\_\_\_ and cost of its investment in \_\_\_\_\_ assets, or \_\_\_\_\_ capital. Working capital is the capital that managers can immediately put to work to generate the \_\_\_\_\_ of capital investment. Working capital is also known as \_\_\_\_\_ capital or \_\_\_\_\_ capital.
2. The firm's \_\_\_\_\_ cycle is the time it takes the firm to turn its investment in inventory into cash. It affects how much the firm ties up in \_\_\_\_\_ assets. The operating cycle comprises the time it takes to: \_\_\_\_\_ the goods, \_\_\_\_\_ them, and \_\_\_\_\_ on their sale. The \_\_\_\_\_ operating cycle considers the

benefit from purchasing goods on \_\_\_\_\_ and is the operating cycle less the number of days of on which the account is still owed. The \_\_\_\_\_ the net operating cycle, the \_\_\_\_\_ the investment in current assets.

3. Cash flows \_\_\_\_\_ of a firm as it pays for the goods and services it \_\_\_\_\_ from others. Cash flows \_\_\_\_\_ the firm as customers \_\_\_\_\_ for the goods and services they \_\_\_\_\_. When we refer to cash, we mean the amount of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ assets—currency, coin, and bank balances. When we refer to cash \_\_\_\_\_, we mean management of cash \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, as well as the stock of \_\_\_\_\_ on hand.
  
4. There is always some degree of \_\_\_\_\_ about future cash needs. Firms typically hold an additional balance, referred to as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ balance, just in case transactions \_\_\_\_\_ exceed the transactions \_\_\_\_\_. But how much to keep as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ depends on the \_\_\_\_\_ of the transactions uncertainty—how well we can \_\_\_\_\_ our transactions needs.
  
5. If a firm needs cash, it must either \_\_\_\_\_ an asset or \_\_\_\_\_ cash. There are \_\_\_\_\_ costs associated with either. \_\_\_\_\_ costs are the fees, \_\_\_\_\_, or other costs associated with \_\_\_\_\_ assets or \_\_\_\_\_ to get cash;

they are analogous to the ordering costs for \_\_\_\_\_.

6. Speeding up \_\_\_\_\_ cash is done by using a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ system, through the selection of \_\_\_\_\_, processing the \_\_\_\_\_ within the firm, \_\_\_\_\_ collection, and \_\_\_\_\_ banking. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a location where banks meet to exchange checks drawn on each other, and a clearinghouse bank is a participant in a clearinghouse. Being a member of a clearinghouse can \_\_\_\_\_ check clearing time by up to one-half a day relative to clearing checks through the \_\_\_\_\_ system. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ bank is a bank that has an agreement with a clearinghouse bank to exchange its checks in the clearinghouse.

7. In addition to speeding up incoming cash, \_\_\_\_\_ down payment of cash is important. It can be done through \_\_\_\_\_ disbursements by \_\_\_\_\_ bank balances by depositing only what is needed to make \_\_\_\_\_ demands on the account and \_\_\_\_\_ disbursement by paying what is \_\_\_\_\_ with checks drawn on a bank that is \_\_\_\_\_ readily accessible to the payee, \_\_\_\_\_ the check processing \_\_\_\_\_.

8. The primary role of marketable securities is to store cash that isn't needed \_\_\_\_\_, but may be needed soon. Examples of these securities are \_\_\_\_\_ of

deposit, \_\_\_\_\_ paper, \_\_\_\_\_ deposits, and \_\_\_\_\_ bills. When evaluating the \_\_\_\_\_ of the investment, the following \_\_\_\_\_ should be considered: \_\_\_\_\_ risk, \_\_\_\_\_ power risk, \_\_\_\_\_ rate risk, \_\_\_\_\_ rate risk, and \_\_\_\_\_ risk.

### **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

Refer to Chapter 19, pages 627–648 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. What factors determine a firm's investment in current assets? What types of firms have more investment in current assets than others?

---

2. What is cash forecasting and what is its relationship to the operating cycle and net operating cycle?

3. Why would a firm hold cash balances?

4. How much cash should a firm hold and what are the costs associated with doing so?

5. What is the lockbox system and how does it function?

### **PROBLEMS**

---

Refer to Chapter 19, pages 627–648 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. P&R Corporation uses about \$1 million in cash each month. The sale of marketable securities to meet any cash deficiencies costs the firm \$100 per transaction. P&R

invests its short-term funds in securities which earn an average of 7%.

a. If each time the firm needs cash it sells \$400,000 of securities, what is the holding cost associated with the cash investment?

b. If each time the firm needs cash it sells \$400,000 of securities, what are the transaction costs associated with the cash investment?

c. Using the Baumol model, what level of cash infusion minimizes costs associated with cash?

2. Assume that the cash flows vary throughout the year. Because of uncertainty surrounding the cash flows, P&R has decided to carry a minimum balance of \$500,000 in cash. The variance of the daily cash flows is \$75,000. They operate on a 365-day year.

a. At what point will a new cash infusion be needed?

- b. At what point should excess cash be invested in marketable securities?
3. DOWNS Shipping ships packages nationwide. Its collection float averages \$250,000 a day. DOWNS is considering a lockbox system which was proposed by its bank in Omaha, Nebraska, because it is in the middle of the country. The system will cost the firm \$35,000, but it is estimated that it will reduce the collection float by three days. Additional processing costs of \$5,000 a year will be saved by the firm because the payments will be sent directly to the bank. The system will necessitate the use of wire transfers, which will cost the firm \$9,000 per year. If DOWNS can earn 10% on its short-term investments, is the system worthwhile?

4. Jewelz, Inc. is a precious stone importer and wholesaler. Jewelz sells approximately 400,000 cut and polished stones each year. The sales occur uniformly throughout the year. Because of high insurance fees, the carrying cost is \$7 per stone. Due to the fact that most of its orders from customers are in advance, Jewelz can let its inventory drop to zero before reordering. It costs the firm \$190 each time it orders and Jewelz currently orders 5,000 stones at a time. Is this the most cost effective order size?

# Management of Receivables and Inventory

## **FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

Refer to Chapter 20, pages 651–673 in *Financial Management And Analysis*.

1. The majority of a firm's investment is in \_\_\_\_\_ assets, however, it is tied up in accounts \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ which represent investments that are necessary for day-to-day \_\_\_\_\_ of the business. A firm needs \_\_\_\_\_ so that it will have \_\_\_\_\_ to sell and the \_\_\_\_\_ of inventory differs among firms largely because of the \_\_\_\_\_ of the products they sell.
2. Firms extend \_\_\_\_\_ to customers to help stimulate \_\_\_\_\_. Extending \_\_\_\_\_ is both a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ and a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ decision. When a firm extends credit to its customers, it does so to encourage \_\_\_\_\_ of its goods and \_\_\_\_\_.

The most direct \_\_\_\_\_ is the \_\_\_\_\_ on the increased sales.

3. The \_\_\_\_\_ cost is similar to the \_\_\_\_\_ cost that we looked at for cash balances: the product of the \_\_\_\_\_ cost of investing in accounts receivable and the \_\_\_\_\_ in the accounts. The \_\_\_\_\_ cost is the \_\_\_\_\_ the firm could have earned on its next best \_\_\_\_\_. The investment is the amount the firm has \_\_\_\_\_ to generate \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The effective cost of trade \_\_\_\_\_ for a customer is calculated by determining the effective \_\_\_\_\_ cost for the length of time the credit is extended. \_\_\_\_\_ this cost makes it \_\_\_\_\_ with the cost of other forms of credit.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ terms consist of the \_\_\_\_\_ amount of credit, the length of period allowed for \_\_\_\_\_, and the \_\_\_\_\_ rate and \_\_\_\_\_ period, if any. The purpose of \_\_\_\_\_ is to attract \_\_\_\_\_, thereby increasing \_\_\_\_\_, and to encourage the early \_\_\_\_\_ of accounts, thereby reducing the amount tied up in accounts \_\_\_\_\_.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ policies specify the procedures for collecting \_\_\_\_\_ accounts. Collection could start with

polite \_\_\_\_\_, continuing in progressively \_\_\_\_\_ steps, and ending by placing the account in the hands of a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ agency. In designing the collection procedures, you must keep in mind that \_\_\_\_\_ efforts to collect may result in \_\_\_\_\_ future sales.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ how well accounts \_\_\_\_\_ are managed can be done using financial \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ schedules. Financial \_\_\_\_\_ can be used to get an overall picture of how fast collection is going on accounts \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ schedules, which are breakdowns of accounts receivable by how \_\_\_\_\_ they have been around, help give a more detailed picture of the \_\_\_\_\_ efforts.
  
8. Ideally, a firm wants to design its \_\_\_\_\_ policy so that the marginal \_\_\_\_\_ from extending \_\_\_\_\_ equals its marginal \_\_\_\_\_ of extending credit. At this point, the firm \_\_\_\_\_ owners' wealth. But the benefits and costs are \_\_\_\_\_. The best the firm can do in \_\_\_\_\_ the benefits and costs from its credit and collection policies is to learn from its own \_\_\_\_\_ or from the experience of others.
  
9. Some firms choose to form a wholly-owned \_\_\_\_\_, that is, a corporation \_\_\_\_\_ by the parent firm in order to provide the \_\_\_\_\_ granting and \_\_\_\_\_ function of the parent firm. The sole

purpose of \_\_\_\_\_ finance subsidiaries is to \_\_\_\_\_ the customers' purchase of the parent firm's \_\_\_\_\_. These subsidiaries can stimulate \_\_\_\_\_ by providing easy access to \_\_\_\_\_.

10. \_\_\_\_\_ is the stock of physical goods for eventual sale. \_\_\_\_\_ consists of raw material, work-in-process, and finished goods available for \_\_\_\_\_. There are many \_\_\_\_\_ in a decision of how much inventory to have on hand. As with accounts receivable, there is a trade-off between the costs of \_\_\_\_\_ in inventory and the costs of \_\_\_\_\_ inventory. There's a cost to too much \_\_\_\_\_ and there's a cost of too \_\_\_\_\_ inventory.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ inventory can be done by looking at financial \_\_\_\_\_ in much the same way we can monitor receivables. The number of days of \_\_\_\_\_ is the ratio of the dollar value of \_\_\_\_\_ at a point in time to the cost of goods sold per day. This ratio is an estimate of the number of \_\_\_\_\_ worth of \_\_\_\_\_ you have on hand. Combined with an estimate of the \_\_\_\_\_ for your goods, this ratio helps you in planning your \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ of goods. The inventory turnover ratio tells, on average, how many times \_\_\_\_\_ flows through the firm—from raw materials to goods sold—during the period.

**SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

Refer to Chapter 20, pages 651–673 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. What is the relationship between a firm extending credit and accounts receivable?

2. What are the implicit costs with granting discounts? What are the costs of credit?

3. What factors should be considered when extending credit?

4. What factors influence the assessment of credit?

5. What are the reasons for holding inventory?

6. Explain the two models of inventory management.

### **PROBLEMS**

---

Refer to Chapter 20, pages 651–673 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. The Retton Corporation currently offers terms of 2/20, net 60 to its customers and is considering a change to 4/15, net 60. The credit manager believes that this will reduce the firm's days of credit from the current 40 days to 30

days, in addition to increasing sales due to the higher discount. Sales are expected to increase from the present \$500,000 to \$800,000. About 60% of Retton's customers take the discount now, and it is estimated that the percentage will increase to 75%. The firm plans to maintain its present contribution margin of 30%. Processing costs and bad debt losses are not expected to change. Retton can earn 12% on its short-term investments.

a. What is the current cost of trade credit for Retton's customers, and what will it be if Retton makes the proposed change?

b. What is the cost to Retton for changing the discount?

c. What is the change in the carrying cost of accounts receivable for Retton?

d. Should Retton make the change?



# Management of Short-Term Financing

## **FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

Refer to Chapter 21, pages 679–714 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. A corporation invests in short-term assets, such as \_\_\_\_\_, accounts \_\_\_\_\_, inventory, and marketable \_\_\_\_\_. Short-term assets are also referred to as \_\_\_\_\_ capital, because they are put to work to generate sales, which eventually result in cash flow that ultimately generates \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ capital comprises \_\_\_\_\_ working capital, the investment necessary to satisfy the \_\_\_\_\_ demands of \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ working capital, the \_\_\_\_\_ between actual working capital and permanent working capital.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ cost of borrowing is the cost of \_\_\_\_\_, considering both \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ costs. This effective cost is the cost of

- \_\_\_\_\_ for a given period, the duration of time over which interest is paid and at the end of which \_\_\_\_\_ is calculated.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ credit is granted by a supplier to a customer purchasing \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ credit arises as the customer acquires goods or services and promises to pay in the \_\_\_\_\_. From the \_\_\_\_\_ point of view, trade credit is a way of making more \_\_\_\_\_. From the \_\_\_\_\_ point of view, trade credit is an easy way to finance the \_\_\_\_\_ of goods. For the \_\_\_\_\_, trade credit creates accounts \_\_\_\_\_; for the \_\_\_\_\_, trade credit creates accounts \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Managing accounts \_\_\_\_\_ involves negotiating the terms of \_\_\_\_\_, as well as deciding when to pay amounts due. Remember that accounts \_\_\_\_\_ are the “flip side” of accounts \_\_\_\_\_—accounts payable are someone else’s accounts receivable. Suppliers are trying to \_\_\_\_\_ costs, in terms of funds tied up in accounts receivables and bad debts. Yet, at the same time, they are extending \_\_\_\_\_ to generate more \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Firms try to set policies so terms of credit are \_\_\_\_\_ within industries. However, if a firm is an important \_\_\_\_\_ of a particular supplier, \_\_\_\_\_ terms of credit may be negotiated. In cal-

- culating the \_\_\_\_\_ of trade credit, managers know that paying within the \_\_\_\_\_ period uses free credit—meaning that payment can be \_\_\_\_\_ and then paid the same as cash on the date of purchase. Also, paying \_\_\_\_\_ the discount period \_\_\_\_\_ the cost of credit.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ financing is backed by some specific \_\_\_\_\_ or assets of the borrower. A borrower's \_\_\_\_\_ used in this way are referred to as \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_ acts as a backup source of \_\_\_\_\_ for the lender if the borrower fails to abide by the terms of the loan. The collateral for short-term financing arrangements are usually \_\_\_\_\_ assets—\_\_\_\_\_ securities, accounts \_\_\_\_\_, or \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Accounts \_\_\_\_\_ can be used as collateral for a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ loan. There are three types of financing arrangements that use accounts \_\_\_\_\_ as security: \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_. Securitizing assets, also referred to as asset \_\_\_\_\_, is an important financing arrangement for raising \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_ term funds.
8. In an assignment of \_\_\_\_\_, the lender makes a loan accepting the borrower's accounts \_\_\_\_\_ as the \_\_\_\_\_. The borrower receives immediate \_\_\_\_\_ in exchange for a(n) \_\_\_\_\_

note to the lender. The borrower's customers are generally instructed to send their payments to the lender, who uses these payments to reduce the \_\_\_\_\_ of the loan.

9. Instead of simply using accounts \_\_\_\_\_ as \_\_\_\_\_, the borrower can \_\_\_\_\_ them outright to another party—called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_—typically a bank or a commercial finance company. Selling the \_\_\_\_\_—called factoring—may be done with or without recourse. The factor performs all the accounts receivable functions: evaluating customers' \_\_\_\_\_, approving \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ on accounts receivable.

10. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ agreement, also referred to as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_, is the sale of a security with a commitment by the seller to buy the same security back from the purchaser at a specified price at a designated future date. The seller repurchases the security at the repurchase \_\_\_\_\_, on the repurchase \_\_\_\_\_. A repurchase agreement is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ loan, where the collateral is the \_\_\_\_\_. The interest rate is the \_\_\_\_\_ rate. When the term of the loan is one day, it is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ repo and a loan for more than one day is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ repo.







- a. Bank A has offered to lend the firm the whole amount for six months at an APR of 16%. The bank will require a compensating balance of 17% of the face value of the loan and will charge a \$1,000 loan origination fee.
  - b. Bank B has offered to lend the entire amount for three months at an APR of 20%. The loan is a discount loan, and Bank B requires a compensating balance requirement of 10%.
  - c. Bank C has offered to lend the firm the entire amount for one month at an APR of 24%. The loan is a single-payment loan with interest and principal to be paid at the end of the month. There is no compensating balance requirement and no loan origination fee.
  - d. CZ can forgo its supplier discounts for the month. The credit terms are 3/10, net 45.
- Which is the cheapest source of financing?

2. The Safe-T Corporation used a repurchase agreement to meet its need for short-term financing. It received \$9.5 million for the sale of \$10 million in face value of U.S. Treasury bills that had a market value of \$9.7 million, and

it repurchased the bills thirty days later for \$9.6 million. What is the effective annual cost?

3. Rustee Iron Works is considering using a field warehouse loan as part of its short-term financing. It will require a loan of \$1 million. Interest on the loan will be at an annual rate of 11%, single-payment interest, paid at the end of the year. The field warehouse charges 3.5% of the face value of the loan, payable at the beginning of the year. What is the effective cost of the warehousing arrangement?

4. Can-Do Corporation has issued five-month commercial paper with a \$250,000 face value. The firm's proceeds

from the sale of the paper are \$237,500. What is the effective annual cost of this loan?

5. The Bags-O-Chips Company wants to use \$800,000 of accounts receivable to secure financing for the next month. We're #1 Finance Company is willing to lend Chips 65% of the face value of the receivables at 40 basis points above the prime rate, which is currently 4% APR. We're #2 Finance Company will factor Chips receivables, advancing 80% of the receivables and charging a fee of 2% of Chips total receivables. This fee will be paid up front. Interest will be at 30 basis points above the prime rate. We're #2 also will be performing all credit functions, saving Chips an estimated \$4,000 for the month. Which arrangement is least costly?

# Financial Ratio Analysis

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

Refer to Chapter 22, pages 721–765 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a mathematical relation between two quantities. A financial \_\_\_\_\_ is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ between one bit of financial information and another. Ratios can be classified according to the way they are \_\_\_\_\_ and the financial \_\_\_\_\_ they are describing. There are as many different financial ratios as there are possible \_\_\_\_\_ of items appearing on financial \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Return-on-\_\_\_\_\_ ratios compare measures of \_\_\_\_\_, such as earnings or net income, with measures of \_\_\_\_\_. The return on \_\_\_\_\_, also called the basic earning \_\_\_\_\_ ratio, is the ratio of \_\_\_\_\_ earnings to total assets. The return on \_\_\_\_\_ is the ratio of the net \_\_\_\_\_ shareholders receive to their \_\_\_\_\_ in the stock.

3. The method of analyzing \_\_\_\_\_ ratios in terms of \_\_\_\_\_ margin and \_\_\_\_\_ ratios, referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_ System, is credited to the E.I. Du Pont Corporation. Du Pont's management developed this system of breaking down return ratios into their \_\_\_\_\_ to help managers understand the " \_\_\_\_\_ " behind the firm's \_\_\_\_\_.
  
4. \_\_\_\_\_ reflects the ability of a firm to meet its \_\_\_\_\_-term obligations using those assets that are most readily converted into \_\_\_\_\_. Assets that may be converted into \_\_\_\_\_ in a short period of time are referred to as \_\_\_\_\_ assets; they are listed in financial statements as \_\_\_\_\_ assets. \_\_\_\_\_ assets are often referred to as \_\_\_\_\_ capital, because they represent the resources needed for the \_\_\_\_\_ operations of the firm's long-term capital investments.
  
5. How much liquidity a firm needs depends on its \_\_\_\_\_ cycle. The \_\_\_\_\_ cycle is the duration from the time \_\_\_\_\_ is invested in goods and \_\_\_\_\_ to the time that investment produces \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_ cycle, the \_\_\_\_\_ the amount of net \_\_\_\_\_ capital required.
  
6. \_\_\_\_\_ margin ratios compare components of \_\_\_\_\_ with \_\_\_\_\_. They give us an

idea of what factors make up a firm's \_\_\_\_\_ and are usually expressed as a portion of each \_\_\_\_\_ of sales. The analyst would focus on \_\_\_\_\_ profit (sales less cost of goods sold), a measure of income that is the direct result of \_\_\_\_\_ management. Comparing \_\_\_\_\_ profit with \_\_\_\_\_ produces the gross profit margin.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ ratios, or turnover ratios, can be used to evaluate the benefits produced by specific \_\_\_\_\_, such as \_\_\_\_\_ or accounts \_\_\_\_\_ or to evaluate the benefits produced by the totality of the firm's assets. The \_\_\_\_\_ turnover ratio indicates how quickly a firm has used inventory to generate the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ sold. The accounts \_\_\_\_\_ turnover ratio measures how effectively a firm uses \_\_\_\_\_ extended to customers. The \_\_\_\_\_ turnover ratio tells how many times during the year the \_\_\_\_\_ of a firm's total assets is generated in \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Financial \_\_\_\_\_ is associated with a firm's ability to satisfy its \_\_\_\_\_ obligations, and is often measured using the extent to which \_\_\_\_\_ financing is used relative to \_\_\_\_\_. Financial \_\_\_\_\_ ratios are used to assess how much financial \_\_\_\_\_ the firm has taken on. There are two types of financial \_\_\_\_\_ ratios: \_\_\_\_\_ percentages and \_\_\_\_\_ ratios.

9. \_\_\_\_\_ coverage ratio, also called times \_\_\_\_\_ ratio, measures a firm's ability to handle financial \_\_\_\_\_. This ratio indicates how well the firm can meet the \_\_\_\_\_ payments associated with \_\_\_\_\_. The \_\_\_\_\_ the interest coverage ratio, the \_\_\_\_\_ able the firm is to pay its \_\_\_\_\_ expenses.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ analysis is a method of analysis in which the components of a financial \_\_\_\_\_ are compared with each other. The first step in \_\_\_\_\_ analysis is to break down a financial statement—either the \_\_\_\_\_ sheet or the \_\_\_\_\_ statement—into its parts. The next step is to \_\_\_\_\_ the proportion that each item represents relative to some \_\_\_\_\_. In common-size analysis of the \_\_\_\_\_ sheet, the benchmark is total \_\_\_\_\_. For the \_\_\_\_\_ statement, the benchmark is \_\_\_\_\_.

**SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

Refer to Chapter 22, pages 721–765 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. How is financial information presented? How is the information classified?

2. What aspects of operating performance and financial condition do financial ratios evaluate?

3. What is the Du Pont System and how is it used?

4. What is the difference between book value and market value and how does it affect financial ratio analysis?

5. Are there any concerns and/or cautions when using financial ratios?

## **PROBLEMS**

---

Refer to Chapter 22, pages 721–765 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. Using Wang Laboratories' balance sheet and income statement for the year ending June 30, 1995, shown on page 773 of *Financial Management and Analysis*, make the following calculations assuming a 365-day year, all sales and purchases are on credit, and that the financial data is in hundreds of thousands:
  - a. Current ratio

b. Quick ratio

c. Inventory turnover ratio

d. Total asset turnover ratio

e. Gross profit margin

f. Operating profit margin

g. Net profit margin

h. Debt-to-assets ratio

i. Debt-to-equity ratio

j. Return on assets (basic earning power)

k. Return on equity

l. Number of days of inventory

m. Number of days of credit

n. Number of days of purchases

o. Operating cycle

p. Net operating cycle

2. Use the information from problem 1 to answer the following: Given the following industry average ratios, what is Wang's standing as it emerges from bankruptcy?

---

Current ratio	2 times
Quick ratio	1 times
Number of days of credit	90 days
Inventory turnover	35 times
Total asset turnover	3 times
Debt-to-equity ratio	45%
Operating profit margin	10%
Net profit margin	7%
Return on assets	9%
Return on equity	11%

---



**Earnings Analysis****FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

Refer to Chapter 23, pages 775–796 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. The theory of stock \_\_\_\_\_ makes sense. If a company's \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows could accurately be \_\_\_\_\_, then the value of the company's \_\_\_\_\_ today could be determined. Therefore the \_\_\_\_\_ could be classified as \_\_\_\_\_ - or \_\_\_\_\_-valued by the market.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ future cash flows is difficult. As an alternative, examination of the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ relation between stock prices and some fundamental value information, such as \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ is needed. Then, using this relation, the \_\_\_\_\_ of a share of stock can be estimated.
3. Earnings can really mean many different things depending on the context. If a financial analyst is evaluating the per-

formance of a company's \_\_\_\_\_, the focus is on \_\_\_\_\_ earnings or earnings before interest and taxes, (\_\_\_\_\_). If the analyst is evaluating the performance of a company \_\_\_\_\_, the focus is on \_\_\_\_\_, which is EBIT \_\_\_\_\_ interest and taxes. If the analyst is evaluating the performance of the company from a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ perspective, the earnings are the earnings available to common shareholders—EBIT less interest, taxes, and \_\_\_\_\_ stock dividends.

4. We often refer to earnings in terms of the \_\_\_\_\_ per share of stock, rather than as a total \_\_\_\_\_ amount generated in a period. Expressing a company's net \_\_\_\_\_ in terms of income per \_\_\_\_\_ allows us to compare it with the company's \_\_\_\_\_ price per share. Earnings per share (\_\_\_\_\_) is earnings available for \_\_\_\_\_ shareholders, divided by the number of common shares \_\_\_\_\_.
  
5. \_\_\_\_\_ earnings per share are earnings minus preferred dividends, divided by the average number of shares outstanding. \_\_\_\_\_ earnings per share are earnings minus preferred dividends, divided by the number of shares outstanding considering all \_\_\_\_\_ securities. Companies that report \_\_\_\_\_ per share for any prior period must \_\_\_\_\_ these amounts in terms of the new basic and diluted calculations.

6. The most common financial ratio forecast is \_\_\_\_\_ earnings per share of a firm, though projections of \_\_\_\_\_ flows and stock \_\_\_\_\_ are available. For most companies whose stock is \_\_\_\_\_-traded, there are a number of \_\_\_\_\_ who analyze the stock and make forecasts regarding earnings in the future. In addition, several service \_\_\_\_\_ collect and report statistics of analysts' \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ earnings forecast is the \_\_\_\_\_ of the earnings per share for a given stock. Services that provide analyst forecast information also provide earnings \_\_\_\_\_ analysis, the difference between \_\_\_\_\_ earnings per share and the \_\_\_\_\_ earnings per share, where the consensus forecast is used as the \_\_\_\_\_ earnings per share.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ earnings forecasts and the forecasts of \_\_\_\_\_ analysts are used to compute several measures that researchers have found to be important factors in \_\_\_\_\_ stock returns such as earnings \_\_\_\_\_, or earnings \_\_\_\_\_. This is a measure of consensus earnings \_\_\_\_\_ found by computing the growth in earnings based on actual earnings for the \_\_\_\_\_ period and the consensus earnings forecasts for the \_\_\_\_\_ period.

9. Relationships in which EPS in a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ period is assumed to depend on EPS in one or more \_\_\_\_\_ periods are called \_\_\_\_\_ models. Often the data used in forecasting EPS are \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ EPS of the company, but it is critical that EPS be \_\_\_\_\_ to reflect changes in accounting requirements. For example, an analyst who used a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ model would want to adjust \_\_\_\_\_ reported EPS based on primary, diluted, or fully diluted EPS for the new reporting requirements.
10. Many investors are interested in how the \_\_\_\_\_ are valued by the market. A measure of how these earnings are valued is the \_\_\_\_\_ ratio (\_\_\_\_\_). This ratio compares the \_\_\_\_\_ per common share with \_\_\_\_\_ per common share. The result is a multiple—the value of a share of \_\_\_\_\_ expressed as a multiple of \_\_\_\_\_ per share. The \_\_\_\_\_ of this measure is referred to as the earnings \_\_\_\_\_ (\_\_\_\_\_).



3. What is the relationship between earnings and stock price?

4. Why do the number of common shares outstanding change? How does the change affect EPS?

5. How accurate are EPS forecasts?

### **PROBLEMS**

---

Refer to Chapter 23, pages 775–796 in *Financial Management and Analysis*

1. Too-Tired Company had 1.5 million shares of stock outstanding at the beginning of the year and 1.87 million shares at the end of the year. After issuing 0.37 million shares at the beginning of the second quarter, if Too-Tired had earnings available to common shareholders of \$6.5 million, what is the company's earnings per share?

2. HiGro Corporation had \$1.80 in earnings per share and paid dividends of \$0.30 per share in 2001. HiGro was selling for \$28.50 a share at the end of 2001. The book value of HiGro's common equity at the time was \$22.00 per share. HiGro has no preferred stock.

a. What was HiGro's dividend payout ratio for 2001?

b. What was the P/E ratio at the end of 2001?

c. Are investors willing to pay more for the stock than its earnings per share?

3. For the 1999 fiscal year, Outtel Corporation had net income of \$4,355 million. At the beginning of the year, there were 1,323 million shares outstanding and at the end of the year there were 1,300 million shares. There are 300 million potentially dilutive shares during 1999 from employee stock option plans and warrants. Calculate the basic and diluted earnings per share.



**Cash Flow Analysis****FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

Refer to Chapter 24, pages 797–817 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ flows are essential ingredients in \_\_\_\_\_: The value of a company today is the present \_\_\_\_\_ of its expected \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows. Therefore, understanding \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows may help the analyst in forecasting future cash flows and, hence determine the value of the company, and also may aid in assessing the ability of a firm to maintain current \_\_\_\_\_ and its current capital \_\_\_\_\_ policy without relying on external \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The primary difficulty with \_\_\_\_\_ a cash flow is that it is a flow: cash flows \_\_\_\_\_ and cash flows \_\_\_\_\_ of the company. At any point in time there is a stock of \_\_\_\_\_ on hand, but it varies among companies because of the \_\_\_\_\_ of the

company, the cash \_\_\_\_\_ of the business, and the company's management of \_\_\_\_\_ capital.

3. From the basic cash flow, the \_\_\_\_\_ cash needs are subtracted resulting in a cash flow referred to as \_\_\_\_\_ cash flow. By restructuring the \_\_\_\_\_ of cash flows in this way, the analyst can see how much \_\_\_\_\_ the company has when it must make business \_\_\_\_\_ that may adversely impact the long-term financial \_\_\_\_\_ of the enterprise.
4. There is \_\_\_\_\_ one correct method of \_\_\_\_\_ free cash flow and different analysts may arrive at different estimates for a company. The problem is that because it is impossible to \_\_\_\_\_ free cash flow as dictated by the theory, so many \_\_\_\_\_ have arisen to \_\_\_\_\_ this cash flow.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ cash flow (\_\_\_\_\_) is free cash flow less interest and other financing costs and taxes. In this approach, free cash flow is defined as \_\_\_\_\_ before depreciation, interest, and taxes \_\_\_\_\_ capital expenditures. Capital \_\_\_\_\_ encompass all capital spending, whether for \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ and no changes in \_\_\_\_\_ capital are considered.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ cash flow gives the analyst an idea of the \_\_\_\_\_ cash flow of the company. This cash flow measure may be useful from a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ perspective in terms of evaluating the company's \_\_\_\_\_ to fund additional \_\_\_\_\_. From a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ perspective, net cash flow net of dividends may be an appropriate measure because this represents the cash flow that is \_\_\_\_\_ in the company.
7. A useful ratio to help further assess a company's cash flow is the cash flow to \_\_\_\_\_ ratio, or \_\_\_\_\_ coverage ratio. This ratio gives the analyst information about the financial \_\_\_\_\_ of the company and is particularly useful for \_\_\_\_\_-intensive firms and utilities. The \_\_\_\_\_ the ratio, the \_\_\_\_\_ the financial flexibility.
8. Another useful cash flow ratio is the cash flow to \_\_\_\_\_ ratio where debt can be represented as total \_\_\_\_\_, long-term \_\_\_\_\_, or a debt measure that captures a specific range of maturity (e.g., debt maturing in 5 years). This ratio gives a measure of a company's \_\_\_\_\_ to meet maturing \_\_\_\_\_ obligations, thus it is a measure of a company's \_\_\_\_\_ quality.
9. The analysis of cash flows provides \_\_\_\_\_ that can be used along with other financial data to help the

analyst assess the financial \_\_\_\_\_ of a company. \_\_\_\_\_ companies tend to have relatively stable relations among the cash flows while \_\_\_\_\_ companies exhibit declining cash flows from \_\_\_\_\_ and financing and \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows for investment one and two years prior to the bankruptcy. Further, \_\_\_\_\_ companies tend to expend \_\_\_\_\_ cash flows to financing sources than they bring in during the year prior to bankruptcy.

### **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

Refer to Chapter 24, pages 797–817 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. What is cash flow and how is it measured?



4. What is free cash flow and why is it important?

5. What can cash flow analysis reveal?

### **PROBLEMS**

---

Refer to Chapter 24, pages 797–817 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. Calculate free cash flow, net free cash flow, and net cash flow for the Krunchy Krust Donuts Company. Their financials are as follows:

**Krunchy Krust Donuts, Income Statement, in millions**

<b>Total Revenue</b>	<b>\$56</b>
Cost of revenue	\$3
Gross profit	\$53
<b>Operating Expenses</b>	
Selling general and administrative expenses	\$8
Nonrecurring	(\$1)
Other operating expenses	\$2
Operating income	\$24
Total other income and expenses net	(\$1)
Earnings before interest and taxes	\$21
Interest expense	\$2
Income before taxes	\$19
Income tax expense	\$7
Net Income	\$12

**Krunchy Krust Donuts, Statement of Cash Flows, in millions**

<b>Net Income</b>	<b>\$12</b>
<b>Cash Flow Operating Activities</b>	
Depreciation	\$4
Adjustments to net income	\$13
<b>Changes in Operating Activities</b>	
Changes in accounts receivables	(\$3)
Changes in liabilities	(\$10)
Changes in inventories	(\$2)
Changes in other operating activities	(\$2)
Cash flows from operating activities	\$12
<b>Cash Flow Investing Activities</b>	
Capital expenditures	(\$15)
Investments	\$7
Other cash flows from investing activities	(\$31)
Cash flows from investing activities	(\$39)
<b>Cash Flow Financing Activities</b>	
Sale/Purchase of stock	\$8
Net borrowings	\$3
Other cash flows from financing activities	(\$2)
Cash dividends paid	(\$2)
Cash flows from financing activities	\$7
<b>Change in cash and cash equivalents</b>	<b>(\$20)</b>



# International Financial Management

## **FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

Refer to Chapter 25, pages 823–858 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. Financial management decisions of most firms are not confined to \_\_\_\_\_ borders. Many \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ decisions involve economies and firms outside a firm's own domestic borders either directly, through \_\_\_\_\_ transactions, or indirectly, through the effects of international issues on the \_\_\_\_\_ economy. International \_\_\_\_\_ management is the management of a firm's assets and liabilities considering the \_\_\_\_\_ economy in which the firm operates.
2. Trends and agreements throughout the twentieth century reduced \_\_\_\_\_. The General \_\_\_\_\_ on \_\_\_\_\_ and Trade (GATT) is a forum for negotiating the reduction in trade \_\_\_\_\_ on a multilat-

eral basis. Monetary cooperation and international trade is facilitated through the \_\_\_\_\_ Fund (\_\_\_\_\_). The \_\_\_\_\_ Union (E.U.) is an organization whose goal is to increase \_\_\_\_\_ cooperation and integration among its European member countries. The North \_\_\_\_\_ Free \_\_\_\_\_ Agreement (\_\_\_\_\_) is a pact among Canada, Mexico, and the United States for the gradual removal of trade barriers for most \_\_\_\_\_ produced and sold in North America.

3. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ company is a firm that does business in two or more \_\_\_\_\_. Most large U.S. corporations are \_\_\_\_\_ firms, deriving a large part of their income from operations beyond the U.S. \_\_\_\_\_. Companies expand beyond their \_\_\_\_\_ borders for many reasons, including: To gain access to new \_\_\_\_\_, to achieve \_\_\_\_\_ efficiency, to gain access to \_\_\_\_\_, to reduce political and regulatory \_\_\_\_\_, to diversify, and to gain access to \_\_\_\_\_.
  
4. Financial managers must be aware of the issues relating to multiple \_\_\_\_\_. In particular, the financial manager must be aware of \_\_\_\_\_ rates and the related \_\_\_\_\_ risk. The \_\_\_\_\_ rate is the number of units of a given currency that can be purchased for one unit of another country's \_\_\_\_\_; the exchange rate tells us about the relative \_\_\_\_\_ of any two currencies. Currency risk or \_\_\_\_\_ risk is

the risk that the relative values of the domestic and foreign currencies will \_\_\_\_\_ change.

5. When a currency \_\_\_\_\_ value relative to other currencies, we say that the currency has \_\_\_\_\_ if the change is due to changes in supply and demand, or been \_\_\_\_\_ if the change is due to government intervention. If the currency \_\_\_\_\_ value relative other currencies, we say that the currency has \_\_\_\_\_ or been \_\_\_\_\_.
6. If there are \_\_\_\_\_ barriers or costs to trade across borders, the \_\_\_\_\_ of a given product will be the \_\_\_\_\_ regardless of where it is sold. This is referred to as the law of \_\_\_\_\_ price: Where there are different \_\_\_\_\_ on either side of the border, after adjusting for the difference in currencies, the \_\_\_\_\_ of a good or service is the same across borders. In the case of different currencies, the law of one price is known as \_\_\_\_\_ (\_\_\_\_\_).
7. Taxes paid by corporate entities can be classified into two types: \_\_\_\_\_ taxes and \_\_\_\_\_ taxes. The former includes taxes paid to the \_\_\_\_\_ government based on \_\_\_\_\_ income and possibly any \_\_\_\_\_ income taxes. Indirect taxes include real estate appreciation, \_\_\_\_\_ taxes, and miscellaneous taxes on \_\_\_\_\_ transactions.

8. It is common for a company's \_\_\_\_\_ in different countries to buy and sell goods from each other. The price for the goods in such \_\_\_\_\_ transactions is called a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ price. Establishing transfer prices to promote goal \_\_\_\_\_ within a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ company is a complicated topic. In practice, a primary goal in the establishment of transfer prices is the minimization of worldwide \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ taxes and \_\_\_\_\_ duty taxes.
9. A corporation is not limited to raising funds in the capital market where it is domiciled. \_\_\_\_\_ means the \_\_\_\_\_ of capital markets throughout the world into a global capital market. From the perspective of a given country, capital markets can be classified into two markets: either a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ market or a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ market, and a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ market. It can be decomposed into two parts: the \_\_\_\_\_ market and the \_\_\_\_\_ market. The \_\_\_\_\_ market is where issuers \_\_\_\_\_ in the country issue securities and where those securities are subsequently \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The world capital markets can be classified as either completely \_\_\_\_\_ or completely \_\_\_\_\_. In a completely \_\_\_\_\_ capital market, investors in one country are \_\_\_\_\_ permitted to invest in the securities issued by an entity in another country. In a completely \_\_\_\_\_ capital market there are \_\_\_\_\_ restrictions to prevent investors from

investing in securities issued in any capital market throughout the world. Real-world capital markets are \_\_\_\_\_ completely segmented nor completely integrated, but fall somewhere in between and are \_\_\_\_\_ segmented or \_\_\_\_\_ integrated.

11. A corporate treasurer seeking to raise funds via a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ offering can issue in the \_\_\_\_\_ sector of another country's bond market or the \_\_\_\_\_. The distinguishing features of the securities in this market are that they are \_\_\_\_\_ by an international syndicate, at issuance they are offered \_\_\_\_\_ to investors in a number of countries, they are issued \_\_\_\_\_ the jurisdiction of any single country, and they are in \_\_\_\_\_ form. The sector of the Euromarket in which bonds are traded is called the \_\_\_\_\_ market.

12. The important elements of cash flows, \_\_\_\_\_ of capital, and analysis are present in the \_\_\_\_\_ capital budgeting decision whether the investment is \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_. There are several sources of the added complexity: \_\_\_\_\_ currency risk, restrictions on \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ risk. These risks and \_\_\_\_\_ affect not only an investment's cost of \_\_\_\_\_ but also make the estimation of cash flows all the more difficult.

**SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

Refer to Chapter 25, pages 823–858 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. Why would a firm participate in the international market?

2. What is free trade?

3. How are corporations taxed?

4. How is taxable income determined?

5. What are IDRs and ADRs?

**PROBLEMS**

---

Refer to Chapter 25, pages 823–858 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. Consider the following exchange rates:

- U.S. \$1 to 1,598 Venezuelan Bolivar's
- U.S. \$1 to 1.56 Australian dollars

a. Calculate the exchange rate of Venezuelan Bolivar's to an Australian dollar.

b. Calculate the exchange rate of Australian dollars to a Venezuelan Bolivar.

3. Suppose that the exchange rate for U.S. \$1 for another currency is such that U.S. \$1 = 3.5 ARS (Argentine pesos). Further suppose that if the exchange rate remains the same, you will receive a 25% return on your investment in ARS currency over the next year's period. As an investor, you are aware of the volatility in Argentina's currency exchange so sudden movements are expected.
- a. If the exchange rate were to change such that \$1 = 50 ARS, what return do you expect on the investment?
- b. If the exchange rate were to change such that \$1 = 2 ARS, what return do you expect on the investment?

3. The 3W company is a U.S. corporation with a subsidiary in another country. 3W's U.S. corporate marginal tax rate is 40% and the subsidiary operating in a foreign country has a marginal tax rate of 52%. 3W manufactures a product for U.S. \$10 a unit and sells 2 million units at cost to the subsidiary who further finishes the unit for another \$10 per unit and sells the completed product for \$190 per unit. The fixed costs for 3W and the subsidiary are \$1 million and \$0.5 million, respectively.
- a. What are the taxes and the net income of the parent, the subsidiary, and the company as a whole if the transfer price is set at \$30 per unit? Include the worldwide net income and taxes.

- b. What are the taxes and the net income of the parent, the subsidiary, and the company as a whole if the transfer price is raised to \$50 per unit? Include the worldwide net income and taxes.



## Borrowing Via Structured Finance Transactions

### **FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

Refer to Chapter 26 pages 861–880 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. As an alternative to the issuance of a corporate \_\_\_\_\_, a corporation can issue a security backed by \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_. Securities that have loans or receivables as their \_\_\_\_\_ are referred to as \_\_\_\_\_-backed securities. The transaction in which asset-backed securities are created is referred to as a structured \_\_\_\_\_ transaction or as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ financing.
2. An issuer seeking to raise funds via a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ financing must establish itself as an issuer in the \_\_\_\_\_-backed securities market. Once an issuer establishes itself in the market, it can look at both the corporate \_\_\_\_\_ market and the \_\_\_\_\_-backed securities market to determine the better

- \_\_\_\_\_ source. It will compare the \_\_\_\_\_ of funds in the corporate bond market and the asset-backed securities market and select the one with the \_\_\_\_\_ cost.
3. Analysis of the \_\_\_\_\_ quality of the collateral depends on the \_\_\_\_\_ type. The \_\_\_\_\_ agencies will look at the underlying borrower's \_\_\_\_\_ to pay and the borrower's \_\_\_\_\_ in the asset. The borrower is the individual or business entity that took out the \_\_\_\_\_. The borrower's equity will be a key \_\_\_\_\_ as to whether a borrower has an economic incentive to \_\_\_\_\_ or to \_\_\_\_\_ the asset and pay off a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
  4. While viewed as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_-party, in many asset-backed securities transactions, the \_\_\_\_\_ is effectively the \_\_\_\_\_ of the loans used as the collateral of the corporation seeking funding. The servicer also may be responsible for advancing \_\_\_\_\_ when there are \_\_\_\_\_ in payments that result in a temporary shortfall in payments to the investors in the securities issued in a structured \_\_\_\_\_ transaction.
  5. \_\_\_\_\_ agencies look at the ability of a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ to perform all the activities that a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ will be responsible for before they assign a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ rating to the bonds issued. If a(n)

\_\_\_\_\_ is unacceptable, a structured finance transaction will \_\_\_\_\_ be rated. The rating agency may require a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ servicer if there is a concern about the ability of a servicer to perform.

6. Ratings companies analyze the \_\_\_\_\_ of cash flow payments to test whether the collateral's cash \_\_\_\_\_ match the \_\_\_\_\_ that must be made to satisfy the issuer's \_\_\_\_\_. This requires that the rating company make assumptions about \_\_\_\_\_ and delinquencies under various interest \_\_\_\_\_ scenarios. Based on its analysis of the collateral and the \_\_\_\_\_ testing of the structure to assess the \_\_\_\_\_ that the bondholders will \_\_\_\_\_ be repaid in full, a rating agency will determine the amount of \_\_\_\_\_ enhancement necessary for an issue to receive a particular \_\_\_\_\_ rating.

7. The way credit \_\_\_\_\_ works is that some third party is either paid a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ or a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ premium or earns extra \_\_\_\_\_ on a security in the structure to assume \_\_\_\_\_ risk. \_\_\_\_\_ credit enhancement involves third-party guarantees such as insurance or a letter of \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ credit enhancement includes overcollateralization, \_\_\_\_\_-subordinated structure, and reserves. Deals will often have \_\_\_\_\_ than one form of credit enhancement. The rating agencies specify the amount of credit enhancement to obtain a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ credit rating.

8. Perhaps the \_\_\_\_\_ form of credit enhancement to understand is \_\_\_\_\_ or a letter of credit. In this form of credit enhancement, a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ provider agrees, for a fee, to \_\_\_\_\_ the performance of a certain amount of the collateral against defaults. Perhaps the biggest perceived disadvantage to this form of credit enhancement is so called \_\_\_\_\_ risk. If the credit enhancement provider is \_\_\_\_\_ then the bonds guaranteed by the enhancement provider are typically \_\_\_\_\_ as well.
9. The \_\_\_\_\_-subordinate structure is another form of \_\_\_\_\_ credit enhancement that involves the subordination of some \_\_\_\_\_ classes for the benefit of attaining a high investment-grade rating for other bond classes. A structure can have \_\_\_\_\_ bond classes. The \_\_\_\_\_ that must be offered on the bond classes are affected by the \_\_\_\_\_ demanded by investors. The \_\_\_\_\_ the credit rating of the bond class, the \_\_\_\_\_ yield is demanded and the \_\_\_\_\_ will be the proceeds received from the sale of the bonds for that class.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ funds come in two forms: \_\_\_\_\_ reserve funds and excess \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ reserve funds are straight deposits of cash generated from issuance proceeds. In this case, part of the underwriting profits from the deal are \_\_\_\_\_ into a fund and used to \_\_\_\_\_ any losses. Excess \_\_\_\_\_ accounts involve the allocation of excess spread into a sepa-

rate reserve account after paying out the \_\_\_\_\_ to bondholders, the servicing \_\_\_\_\_, and all other \_\_\_\_\_ on a monthly basis.

### **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

Refer to Chapter 26 pages 861–880 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. What is a structured finance transaction?

2. Why use a structured finance transaction?

3. What is a captive finance company?

4. What do rating agencies look at in rating asset-backed securities?

**Equipment Leasing****FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

Refer to Chapter 27, pages 883–914 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a contract wherein, over the term of the \_\_\_\_\_, the owner of the equipment permits another entity to use it in exchange for a promise by the latter to make a series of \_\_\_\_\_. The owner of the equipment is referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_. The entity that is being granted permission to use the equipment is referred to as the \_\_\_\_\_.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ leases fall into two general categories: \_\_\_\_\_-oriented leases and \_\_\_\_\_-oriented true leases. \_\_\_\_\_-oriented leases, also referred to as \_\_\_\_\_ leases, transfer all incidents of ownership of the leased property to the lessee and usually give the lessee a fixed \_\_\_\_\_, bargain purchase option, or \_\_\_\_\_ option not based on fair market value at the time of exercise. Substantial cost savings

- can often be achieved through the use of \_\_\_\_\_-oriented true leases in which the \_\_\_\_\_ claims and retains the tax benefits of ownership and passes through to the \_\_\_\_\_ a portion of such tax benefits in the form of reduced lease payments.
3. The most frequent \_\_\_\_\_ cited by \_\_\_\_\_ company representatives and \_\_\_\_\_ is that leasing \_\_\_\_\_ working capital. The reasoning is as follows: When a firm \_\_\_\_\_ money to purchase equipment, the lending institution rarely provides an amount \_\_\_\_\_ to the entire price of the equipment to be financed. Instead, the lender requires the \_\_\_\_\_ firm to take a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ position in the equipment by making a down \_\_\_\_\_.
  4. The amount of the down \_\_\_\_\_ will depend on such factors as the type of \_\_\_\_\_, the \_\_\_\_\_ of the borrower, and prevailing \_\_\_\_\_ conditions. \_\_\_\_\_, in contrast, typically provides 100% financing because it does not require the firm to make a down payment. Moreover, costs incurred to acquire the equipment, such as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ charges, are not usually covered by a loan agreement. They may, however, be structured into a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ agreement.
  5. Current financial reporting \_\_\_\_\_ for leases require that lease obligations classified as \_\_\_\_\_

leases be capitalized as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ on the \_\_\_\_\_ sheet. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ lease is \_\_\_\_\_ capitalized. Instead, certain information regarding such leases must be disclosed in a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ to the \_\_\_\_\_ statement. Many chief financial officers avoid \_\_\_\_\_ leases to enhance the financial image of their corporations; instead they prefer \_\_\_\_\_ leases.

6. With a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ operating lease, the lessee can avoid the risk of \_\_\_\_\_ by terminating the contract. However, the \_\_\_\_\_ of risk is not without a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ as the lease payments under such lease arrangements reflect the risk of obsolescence perceived by the lessor. At the end of the lease term, the \_\_\_\_\_ of the obsolete equipment becomes the problem of the \_\_\_\_\_. The risk of loss in residual \_\_\_\_\_ that the lessee passes on to the lessor is embodied in the \_\_\_\_\_ of the lease.
  
7. An advantage of leasing is that lease agreements typically do not impose financial \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ on management as does a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ agreement used to finance the purchase of equipment. The historic reason for this in \_\_\_\_\_ leases is that the \_\_\_\_\_ Service discouraged \_\_\_\_\_ leases from having attributes of \_\_\_\_\_ agreements.

8. In a properly structured \_\_\_\_\_ lease arrangement, the \_\_\_\_\_ lease payment from leasing rather than borrowing can provide a lessee with a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ cash flow. Whether the cash flow on a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ basis after taking the residual value of the equipment into account is \_\_\_\_\_ on a present value basis must be ascertained. Lease payments under a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ lease will usually have \_\_\_\_\_ impact on \_\_\_\_\_ earnings during the early years of the lease than will \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ payments associated with the purchase of the same equipment.
9. Corporate lessors may be generally categorized as \_\_\_\_\_ banks or their \_\_\_\_\_, independent \_\_\_\_\_ companies, \_\_\_\_\_ leasing subsidiary companies of nonfinance companies, \_\_\_\_\_ companies or their subsidiaries, \_\_\_\_\_ banking firms, and subsidiaries of life or casualty \_\_\_\_\_ companies.
10. Many banks and bank holding companies or their subsidiaries participate \_\_\_\_\_ in leasing through \_\_\_\_\_ relationships with independent and captive leasing companies. \_\_\_\_\_ leasing or finance companies are generally \_\_\_\_\_ of equipment manufacturers, and their primary purpose is to secure financing for the customers of the \_\_\_\_\_ company. \_\_\_\_\_ also may be involved in the \_\_\_\_\_ financing of equipment other than that manufactured by their parent company.

11. Lease \_\_\_\_\_ and financial \_\_\_\_\_ can perform a useful service for both lessees and lessors in arranging \_\_\_\_\_ leases. They can be especially helpful to a lessee by obtaining attractive \_\_\_\_\_ from a legitimate investor and advising the lessee in \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ the transaction. While lease brokers and financial advisers typically represent \_\_\_\_\_, they can be helpful to a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ in finding solutions to negotiating issues. For its services as an intermediary, the broker or adviser receives a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ commission. The amount of the remuneration depends on the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ of the deal to the lessor in the prevailing economic \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The \_\_\_\_\_ lease provides the lessee with \_\_\_\_\_ benefits and the lessor with \_\_\_\_\_ benefits. The lease is treated as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ sheet item and protects the lessee's \_\_\_\_\_ of acquiring the residual value of the leased equipment at the termination of the lease.



3. Why lease?

4. What are the accounting practices for leases?

### **PROBLEMS**

---

Refer to Chapter 27, pages 883–914 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. The Xhaust Company is considering the acquisition of a machine that costs \$150,000 if bought today. The company can buy or lease the machine. If Xhaust buys the machine, the machine would be depreciated as a 3-year

MACRS asset and is expected to have a salvage value of \$5,000 at the end of the 5-year useful life. If leased, the payments are \$35,000 each year for four years, payable at the beginning of each year. The marginal tax rate for Xhaust is 30% and the cost of capital is 12%. Assume that the lease is a net lease, that any tax benefits are realized in the year of the expense, and that there is no investment tax credit.

a. Calculate the depreciation for each year in the case of the purchase of this machine.

b. Calculate the direct cash flows from leasing initially and for each of the five years.

c. Calculate the adjusted discount rate.

d. Calculate the value of the lease.

e. Calculate the amortization of the equivalent loan.



**Project Financing****FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

Refer to Chapter 28, pages 917–930 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ financing is a debt obligation that is backed by the \_\_\_\_\_ of an asset or credit support provided by a third party. The key in an asset \_\_\_\_\_ is to remove the assets (i.e., loans and receivables) from the \_\_\_\_\_ sheet of an entity. The special purpose \_\_\_\_\_ (\_\_\_\_\_) is the entity that acquires the \_\_\_\_\_ and sells the \_\_\_\_\_ to purchase the assets.
2. Structured finance is used by \_\_\_\_\_ to fund major projects. A benefit to using structured finance is that the lenders look to the cash \_\_\_\_\_ from the project being financed rather than the corporation or \_\_\_\_\_ seeking funding. This financing technique is called \_\_\_\_\_ financing and uses the \_\_\_\_\_ to accomplish its financing objectives.

3. While a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ may be willing to look initially to the cash \_\_\_\_\_ of a project as the source of funds for \_\_\_\_\_ of the loan, the lender must also feel comfortable that the loan will in fact be \_\_\_\_\_ on a(n) \_\_\_\_\_-case basis. This may involve undertakings or direct or indirect \_\_\_\_\_ by third parties who are motivated in some way to provide such guarantees.
  
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ party in a project is its promoter or \_\_\_\_\_. A project may have one or several \_\_\_\_\_. The motivation of \_\_\_\_\_ companies acting as sponsors is to profit in some way from the \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ of the project. The motivation of \_\_\_\_\_ companies for sponsoring a project may be simply to make a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ from selling the product produced by the project. In many instances, the motivation for the project is to provide \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ of a sponsor's basic product or to ensure a source of supply vital to the sponsor's business.
  
5. The ultimate goal in project financing is to arrange \_\_\_\_\_ for a project which will benefit the \_\_\_\_\_ and at the same not affect the \_\_\_\_\_ standing or \_\_\_\_\_ sheet. One way this can be accomplished is by using the credit of a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ party to support the transaction. Such a party then becomes a sponsor. However, projects are rarely financed \_\_\_\_\_ on their own merits without credit support.

6. Project \_\_\_\_\_ regard a project as acceptable only after the plant or facility has been in \_\_\_\_\_ for a sufficient period of \_\_\_\_\_ to ensure that the plant will in fact \_\_\_\_\_ the product or service at the price, in the \_\_\_\_\_, and to the standards assumed in the financial \_\_\_\_\_ that formed the basis for the financing. This \_\_\_\_\_ risk period may run from a few months to several years.
7. Project financing can sometimes be used to improve the \_\_\_\_\_ on the capital \_\_\_\_\_ in a project by \_\_\_\_\_ the investment to a greater extent than would be possible in a straight \_\_\_\_\_ financing of the project. This can be accomplished by locating other \_\_\_\_\_ interested in getting the project built, and shifting some of the \_\_\_\_\_ coverage to such parties through \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ guarantees.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ benefits from any applicable tax credits, \_\_\_\_\_ deductions, \_\_\_\_\_ deductions, \_\_\_\_\_ deductions, \_\_\_\_\_ and development tax deductions, \_\_\_\_\_-received credits, \_\_\_\_\_ tax credits, \_\_\_\_\_ gains, and noncapital start-up expenses are very significant considerations in the investment, \_\_\_\_\_ service, and cash flow of most project financings. Care must be used in structuring project financing to make sure that these tax \_\_\_\_\_ are used.

9. When a project financing is housed in a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ entity that does not have \_\_\_\_\_ to shelter, it is important to structure the project financing so that any tax benefits can be \_\_\_\_\_ to parties currently in a position to \_\_\_\_\_ such tax benefits. For U.S. federal income tax purposes, \_\_\_\_\_ control is required for tax \_\_\_\_\_, except in the case of certain \_\_\_\_\_ subsidiaries, in which \_\_\_\_\_ control may require consolidation.

### **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

Refer to Chapter 28, pages 917–930 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. Why is project financing appealing?

2. What are the credit exposures in a project financing?

3. What are some causes of project failures?

4. What is nonrecourse borrowing?

5. What are some of the incentives and disincentives of project financing?

## Strategy and Financial Planning

### FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

Refer to Chapter 29, pages 933–967 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. Budgeting is mapping out the sources and uses of funds for future periods requiring both \_\_\_\_\_ analysis, including \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ analysis includes both \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ analysis to develop forecasts of future \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. \_\_\_\_\_ techniques are used as a measurement device but instead of using accounting to \_\_\_\_\_ what has happened, in budgeting, firms use accounting to \_\_\_\_\_ what we expect to happen in the future.
2. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ advantage is the advantage one firm has over others in terms of the cost of \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ goods or services. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ advantage is the advantage one firm has over another because of the structure of the markets (input and output

- markets) in which they both operate. Only through having some type of advantage can a firm \_\_\_\_\_ in something and get \_\_\_\_\_ back in \_\_\_\_\_.
3. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ of gaining a competitive or comparative advantage is consistent with \_\_\_\_\_ shareholder wealth. This is because projects with \_\_\_\_\_ value arise when the firm has a competitive or comparative advantage over other firms. A strategy is the direction a firm takes to meet its \_\_\_\_\_. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ plan is how a firm intends to go in that direction. In \_\_\_\_\_ management, a strategic investment plan includes policies to seek out possible investment \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ forecasts are an important part of financial planning. \_\_\_\_\_ forecasts can result in shortages of \_\_\_\_\_, inadequate short-term \_\_\_\_\_ arrangements, and so on. If a firm's sales forecast \_\_\_\_\_ its mark, either \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ sales, there are many potential \_\_\_\_\_.
5. To predict \_\_\_\_\_ flows, we must forecast sales that are uncertain because they are affected by future \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ conditions. Nevertheless, we can usually assign meaningful degrees of \_\_\_\_\_ to our forecasts. We forecast \_\_\_\_\_ in one of the following ways:

\_\_\_\_\_ analysis; \_\_\_\_\_ surveys; and \_\_\_\_\_ of management.

6. The experience of a firm's management and their \_\_\_\_\_ with the firm's \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ make them reliable forecasters of \_\_\_\_\_ sales. The firm's own managers should have the \_\_\_\_\_ to predict the market for the goods and services and to \_\_\_\_\_ the costs of producing and marketing them. But there are potential \_\_\_\_\_ in using management forecasts. These forecasts may \_\_\_\_\_ the firm to \_\_\_\_\_ more resources, such as a larger capital budget and additional personnel, to that manager.
  
7. \_\_\_\_\_ is an important element in planning for both the \_\_\_\_\_-term and the \_\_\_\_\_-term. But forecasts are made by \_\_\_\_\_. Forecasters tend to be \_\_\_\_\_, which usually results in \_\_\_\_\_ than deserved forecasts of \_\_\_\_\_ sales. In addition, people tend to focus on what worked in the \_\_\_\_\_, so past successes carry more \_\_\_\_\_ in the developing forecasts than an analysis of the future. One way to avoid this is to make managers \_\_\_\_\_ for their forecasts, \_\_\_\_\_ accurate forecasts and \_\_\_\_\_ those that are way off the mark.

8. In \_\_\_\_\_, we bring together analyses of \_\_\_\_\_ flows, projected \_\_\_\_\_ statements, and projected \_\_\_\_\_ sheets. The \_\_\_\_\_ flow analyses are \_\_\_\_\_ important although generation of the \_\_\_\_\_ statement and \_\_\_\_\_ sheet is needed. Most firms extend or receive \_\_\_\_\_, so cash flows and net income do not \_\_\_\_\_.
9. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ balance sheet is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ balance sheet for a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ period that summarizes assets, liabilities, and equity. A pro forma \_\_\_\_\_ statement is the projected \_\_\_\_\_ statement for a future period that summarizes \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. Together, both projections help identify a firm's \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ needs.
10. The \_\_\_\_\_ of accounts method starts with the \_\_\_\_\_ budget. Before putting together the \_\_\_\_\_ income statement and balance sheet, we need to see how the various \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ accounts change from month to month, based on the information provided in the cash budget. The \_\_\_\_\_ method uses historical relationships between \_\_\_\_\_ and each of the other \_\_\_\_\_ statement accounts and between \_\_\_\_\_ and each of the \_\_\_\_\_ sheet accounts.





5. What are the techniques used for cash flow analysis and forecasting?

## PROBLEMS

---

Refer to Chapter 29, pages 933–967 in *Financial Management and Analysis*.

1. The financial manager of DoReMi Company has prepared the following pro forma balance sheet for next month:

Assets		Liabilities and Equities	
Cash	\$500	Accounts payable	\$525
Accounts receivable	300	Long-term debt	575
Inventory	300	Common equity	400
Plant and equipment	400	Total liabilities and equity	\$1,500
Total assets	\$1,500		

After preparing this budget, the financial manager knows that DoReMi must maintain a current ratio of 4 and a debt-to-equity ratio less than 2 at all times. How might the accounts be adjusted so that these ratios are achieved in the quickest and most correct manner? Propose an

alternative pro forma balance sheet that satisfies this constraint. How does the adjustment alter DoReMi's risk?

2. Consider the Tomato Company's sales for the peak summer months:

July	\$12,000
August	\$20,000
September	\$15,000

Eighty percent of Tomato's sales are for credit. Eighty percent of all credit sales are paid the following month and the remainder are paid two months after the sale. Estimate Tomato's cash flow from these sales.

3. Suppose a firm had the following assets at the end of 2000:

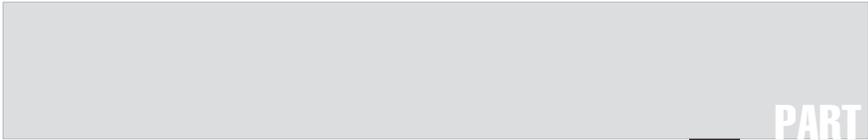
---

Current assets	\$200,000
Plant assets	\$500,000
Total assets	\$700,000

---

If the firm had sales of \$1 million, use the percentage of sales method with 2000 as the base year. What are the predicted current assets and plant assets for the firm for 2001, if sales are forecasted to be \$1,400,000?





PART

# Two

## Solutions



# Introduction to Financial Management and Analysis

## **FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

### **Answers**

1. Finance; financial management, investments, financial institutions; financial management
2. Investment decisions, financing decisions; costs, benefits; risk
3. financial analysis; divisions (or departments), product lines, creditworthiness, competition
4. Sole proprietorship, partnership, corporation; corporation, sole proprietorships; general, limited, corporation
5. articles of incorporation; bylaws; shareholders; board of directors; publicly-held, closely-held; Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC)
6. Proprietorships', partnerships', corporation; double taxation
7. limited liability company, partnership, corporation; tax, liable; joint venture; partnership, corporation
8. shareholders', price; a share of stock, shares outstanding; present value; efficient market, abnormal; risk

9. Accounting; Economic; economic
10. agent; principal; monitoring costs, bonding costs, residual loss; long; stock options, restricted stock grants

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. No, small investors should invest in the stock market only if they are willing and able to accept more risk for the possibility of a higher return. The investor should not expect to earn a return greater than what will compensate for the risk being borne.
2. Economic profits should be the most important to the shareholder. When they are greater than zero, the shareholder is receiving adequate compensation for the investment's risk. Accounting profits may or may not compensate the shareholder since they are accounting measures and do not always reflect the risk of the investment.
3. Performance shares do not require managers to make any personal investment. The shares of stock under this plan are awards and tied to some measure of short-term accounting profits. A restricted options plan, in particular a premium-priced option, is valuable only if the price of the stock increases above its current level. This encourages managers to maximize the share price, hence, shareholder wealth.
4. Because research shows that stock markets are efficient and the information is now public, your broker should inform you that the news of the new medication has already been impounded in the price of the stock and while you cannot expect to earn abnormal returns based on this information, you are likely to earn the appropriate return to compensate for the risk associated with the investment.
5. a Because the business is a partnership, the owners' shares of the profits and losses are proportionate to what each invested. Thus for Annie, \$50,000 divided by the sum of \$50,000 and \$25,000 = 0.667 or 2/3 of the business. For Alice, \$25,000 divided by the sum of

\$50,000 and \$25,000 = 0.333 or 1/3 of the business. With taxable income of \$12,000, Annie will declare  $0.667 \times \$12,000 = \$8,000$  and Alice will declare  $0.333 \times \$12,000 = \$4,000$ .

- b. Because both partners are jointly and severally liable for the debts of the business, creditors can recover any debt that remains after the sale of the assets by either or both partners. The assets of the firm can be sold for \$30,000 and the debt amounts to \$50,000, so there is \$20,000 still owed to the creditors. The creditors may receive some of the \$20,000 from each partner or all of the \$20,000 from either partner, whoever has sufficient assets.
- c. If the business had been a limited partnership, then Alice could lose only her initial investment of \$25,000. She would not be held liable for any other debts. Annie would likewise lose her initial investment of \$50,000 and would be liable for the \$20,000 due to the creditors after the assets are sold.
- d. If the business had been a corporation, then the creditors would have received the \$30,000 from the sale of the assets. However, Annie and Alice would not be personally liable for the remaining \$20,000 due to the creditors (unless one of them had signed a note personally guaranteeing repayment of any responsibility. This often happens when there are few owners of a corporation). In general, owners of a corporation have limited liability to the extent of the amount invested in the corporation.



# Securities and Markets

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

### Answers

1. security; securities market; money market, capital market, derivative; Money market; Capital market
2. Commercial paper; Treasury bill; Negotiable, commercial banks
3. Common stock; Shareholders; no; dividends; Preferred
4. principal (or face value, or par value, or maturity value); interest payments; notes; Municipal; federal; General obligation; Revenue; over-the-counter, exchanges
5. primary, secondary; private placements, underwriting
6. Exchanges; over-the-counter; privately; banks, the government; registered; Securities and Exchange
7. New York Stock Exchange; American Stock Exchange; regional, New York Stock Exchange; NASDAQ; National Market System; second; 30, 500
8. efficient, Weak, abnormal; semistrong; semistrong; Strong, insider

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. Common stock does not have a maturity nor does it have to pay a dividend; and common shareholders are least priority in case the firm is liquidated. Bonds have a maturity date and pay an interest rate that is generally permanent. Unlike shareholders, bondholders are included among the first that are paid in the event that the firm is liquidated.
2. Because common stock does not have a maturity and the stockholders are not guaranteed to receive a dividend, they are called residual owners of the firm. For this lack of guaranteed dividend, they have the right to elect the board of directors.

Preferred stock is more expensive than common stock and it, too, has no maturity. Preferred stockholders are guaranteed to receive dividends and have priority over common stockholders in the ownership of the firm. Unlike the common stockholders, they usually do not have voting rights.
3. Both types of bonds are municipal bonds and are free from federal taxation (i.e., the interest earned on them is free from taxation). General obligation bonds are backed by the taxing power of the issuer, whereas revenue bonds are backed by the proceeds of a specific project.
4. It all depends on a variety of factors such as the investment goals, liquidity preferences, and risk aversion of the investor. One type of investment instrument is not necessarily better than bonds or vice versa. However, there are times when one is preferred to the other in the midst of a particular business cycle, hence investors should diversify their portfolios by having a combination of stocks and bonds. If an investor is a risk taker, she or he may want only high-risk stocks. If an investor is risk averse, she or he may diversify to minimize nonsystematic risk. Further, if the investor is in a high tax bracket, bonds are more attractive than stocks that pay dividends because the interest income is not taxed at the federal rate. Likewise, an investor in a lower tax bracket may prefer dividends as they are taxed at a lower rate. Also, the need for liquidity plays a role as stocks are highly liquid and bonds have longer maturities than stocks.

5. The exchanges are a physical location where securities are traded. The over-the-counter market is not a physical location but a computerized network.



# Financial Institutions and the Cost of Money

## **FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

### **Answers**

1. Federal Reserve System, central; monetary, loanable
2. Supply, demand, interest, borrow, interest, investing; demand, investment; supply
3. Electronic, e-cash, cyberscash, digicash, electronically, Federal Reserve; cash, credit cards, checks; transaction
4. Financial institutions, financial, assets; broker, dealer, underwriting, investment portfolios
5. procuring, advice, strategies, restructuring, acquisitions
6. regulated, supervised, federal, state; legislation, Financial Services Modernization, Gramm-Leach-Bliley; underwriting, selling
7. primary, newly, securities, raise; issuer; distribute, investment bankers
8. Underwriting, Securities and Exchange; securities, registration, financial

9. good; need, pay, lend, compensated; interest rate; greater, higher, lower, lower
10. secondary, price; interest, price; face, yield, coupon
11. creditworthiness, Moody's, Standard & Poor's, Fitch; high grade; triple A; investment, noninvestment, high, junk
12. embedded, bondholder, issuer; call; retire; put; sell; convertible
13. yield, expectations, pure, liquidity, preferred habitat; segmentation

## **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

### **Answers**

1. Financial intermediaries can raise capital by issuing financial claims against themselves that investors purchase. The company uses the money raised to invest and technically, the investors are investing by indirect means through the financial intermediary. The investments offered provide the investor with a range of diversified investments that have various maturity dates at reduced costs.
2. There are several types of deposit institutions: commercial banks, savings and loan associations or thrifts, mutual savings banks, and credit unions.
  - Commercial banks: corporations owned by investors that lend to businesses and offer a multitude of basic financial services
  - Savings and loan associations: institutions owned by depositors that concentrate on offering home mortgage loans
  - Mutual savings banks: institutions owned by depositors that provide loans to the local community
  - Credit unions: nonprofit associations owned by depositors that make personal loans to members
3. There are a number of nondeposit financial institutions that hold financial assets:
  - Trust companies: act as trustee based on the terms of a contract

- Investment companies: invest in pools of assets with finances raised from the sale of stock
  - Pension funds: Manage workers' retirement accumulation in stocks and bonds
  - Insurers: provide a range of protection policies for the investor
4. There are many interest rates in any economy, called a structure of interest rates, and they are determined by many factors. Traditionally Treasury securities' interest rates serve as the benchmark of interest rates. The risk premium is the interest rate on a non-Treasury security and it factors in any other risks an investor may bear by buying it. These other risks include creditworthiness, option provisions, demand in the market (liquidity), the length to maturity, and tax consequences.
  5. The theoretical interest rates or yields that the U.S. Treasury would pay for bonds with differing maturities are Treasury spot rates. Spot rates are also known as forward rates and some believe them to be the market's consensus of future interest rates. In this market consensus, the market prices expectations of future interest rates into the existing interest rates of investments with differing maturities. Understanding forward rates is helpful for hedging because it facilitates the use of options in order to avoid an unfavorable future interest rate.
  6. The term structure of interest rates relates the yield on a bond to its maturity; the yield curve is the graph of this relationship that extends it over different maturities. The graph of the term structure can have the following shapes: a normal or upward-sloping curve, indicating the yield rises steadily as maturity increases; a downward-sloping or inverted yield curve, where yields decline as maturity increases; and a flat yield curve.



# Introduction to Derivatives

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

### Answers

1. futures, buy, sell, underlying; futures; settlement
2. economic, hedge, risk; Futures, exchanges, agricultural, industrial; stock, interest, currency
3. Clearinghouse, guaranteeing; Counterparty, settlement; futures
4. deposit, minimum; initial; price, fluctuates, position; market, marking, market, marking, market
5. buying, long; sale, short; buyer, profit, increases, seller, profit, decreases
6. writer, buyer, sell, price, period; premium; exercised; expiration
7. any, expiration, American; expiration, European; before, specified, Bermuda
8. intrinsic; time; economic, exercised
9. swap, periodic; dollar, notional principal; Swaps, nonfinance, interest, currency, commodity; risk, return, forward

10. cap, seller, buyer, exceeds; floor, seller, buyer, less; interest, commodity; cap, call, floor, put

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. There are a variety of derivative instruments including futures contracts, forward contracts, option contracts, swap agreements, and cap and floor agreements. Derivative instruments are investment products that help firms to hedge against certain risks that are uninsurable. The value of the derivative comes from the basis of the contract.
2. A futures contract offers liquidation opportunities prior to the settlement date. This is achieved by the holder taking what is called an offsetting position in the same contract. The holder may also liquidate a futures contract on the settlement date. The purchaser of a futures contract receives the underlying item at the agreed-upon price. The seller liquidates the position by delivering the underlying at the agreed-upon price.
3. Forward contracts are nonstandardized, therefore terms for each contract are decided between the buyer and seller. Clearinghouses and secondary markets do not exist for forwards, therefore they are traded over-the-counter. Both futures and forward contracts provide delivery terms, however, futures contracts are not supposed to be settled by delivery as are forward contracts. Futures contracts are marked-to-market at the end of each trading day, meaning that the accounts are adjusted according to the daily closing prices. Further, this means futures accounts are allowed to have varying cash flows in and out according to price fluctuation. A forward does not have to be marked-to-market, this implies account cash flows do not vary. Finally, unlike investors in futures, investors in a forwards face credit risk exposure, or counterparty risk, since a party may default on the obligation especially since there is no clearinghouse or secondary market.
4. With an option, the buyer has the right but not the obligation to transact and the option writer must perform. In the case of a futures contract, both buyer and seller are obligated to perform. However, a futures buyer does not pay the seller to accept the obligation, while an

option buyer pays the seller an option price. The risks and rewards for the two contracts differ accordingly: Buyers of futures contracts realize a dollar-for-dollar gain (loss) when the price of the futures contract increases (decreases), and vice versa for sellers of futures contracts. Options do not have this. The most that the buyer of an option can lose is the option price at the same time they maintain all the benefits. The writer's profit is the option price, however the writer assumes much downside risk. Savvy investors use futures to protect against symmetric risk and options to protect against asymmetric risk.

5. Swaps are multiple packages of forward contracts. Because forward contracts do not have a long maturity, investors who need a longer maturity can find it in a swap. Also, swaps are convenient as the payoff for the bundle of forward contracts is negotiated together and not separately. Further, swaps have become quite liquid and there is more of a demand for them in the market.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. The futures price of Asset X increases to \$135. Alex, the buyer of the futures contract, could then sell the futures contract and realize a profit of \$35 (\$135 minus the futures price of \$100). Effectively, at the settlement date he has agreed to buy Asset X for \$100 but can sell Asset X for \$135. Adrienne, the seller of the futures contract, will realize a loss of \$35. If the futures price falls to \$50 and Adrienne buys the contract, she realizes a profit of \$50 because she agreed to sell Asset X for \$100 and now can buy it for \$50. Alex would realize a loss of \$50. Thus, if the futures price decreases, the buyer of the futures contract realizes a loss while the seller of a futures contract realizes a profit.
2. Because it is an American call option, it may be exercised at any time up to and including the expiration date. Lydia can decide to buy from the writer of this option one unit of Asset X, for which she will pay a price of \$75. If it is not beneficial for her to exercise the option, she will not. Whether the option is exercised or not, the \$3 paid for the option will be kept by the option writer. If Lydia buys a put option, then she would be able to sell Asset X to the option writer for a price of \$75. The maximum amount Lydia can lose is the option price. The

maximum profit that the option writer can realize is the option price. Lydia has substantial upside return potential, while the option writer has substantial downside risk. There are no margin requirements for Lydia once the option price has been paid in full. Because the option price is the maximum amount Lydia can lose, no matter how adverse the price movement of the underlying, there is no need for margin. Because the writer of an option has agreed to accept all of the risk and none of the reward of the position in the underlying, the writer is generally required to put up the option price received as margin. In addition, as price changes occur that adversely affect the writer's position, the writer is required to deposit additional margin because the position is marked to market.

3. The profit and loss from the strategy will depend on the price of Asset X at the expiration date. A number of outcomes are possible.

- If the price of Asset X at the expiration date is less than \$40 (the option price), then the investor will not exercise the option. It would be foolish to pay the option writer \$60 when Asset X can be purchased in the market at a lower price. In this case, the option buyer loses the entire option price of \$2. Notice, however, that this is the maximum loss that the option buyer will realize, regardless of how low Asset X's price declines.
- If Asset X's price is equal to \$40 at the expiration date, there is again no economic value in exercising the option. As in the case where the price is less than \$40, the buyer of the call option will lose the entire option price, \$2.
- If Asset X's price is more than \$40 but less than \$42 at the expiration date, the option buyer will exercise the option. By exercising, the option buyer can purchase Asset X for \$40 (the exercise price) and sell it in the market for the higher price. Suppose, for example, that Asset X's price is \$41 at the expiration date. The buyer of the call option will realize a \$1 gain by exercising the option. Of course, the cost of purchasing the call option was \$2, so \$1 is lost on this position. By failing to exercise the option, the investor loses \$2 instead of only \$1.
- If Asset X's price at the expiration date is equal to \$42, the investor will exercise the option. In this case, the investor breaks even, realizing a gain of \$2 that offsets the cost of the option, \$2.
- If Asset X's price at the expiration date is more than \$42, the investor will exercise the option and realize a profit. For example, if the price is \$50, exercising the option will generate a profit on Asset X

of \$10. Reducing this gain by the cost of the option (\$2), the investor will realize a net profit from this position of \$8.

4. The intrinsic value is  $\$110 - 100 = \$10$ . That is, an option buyer exercising the option and simultaneously selling the underlying asset would realize \$110 from the sale of the underlying, which would be covered by acquiring the underlying from the option writer for \$100, thereby netting a \$10 gain. This option is “in the money.” When the exercise price of a call option exceeds the current price of the underlying, the call option is out-of-the money and has no intrinsic value. If the exercise price is equal to the current price it is at-the-money and also has no intrinsic value (0).

For a put option, the intrinsic value is equal to the amount by which the current price of the underlying is below the exercise price:  $\$100 - 90 = \$10$ . The buyer of the put option who exercises the put option and simultaneously sells the underlying will net \$10 by exercising. The asset will be sold to the writer for \$100 and purchased in the market for \$90. For the put option, it would be: in-the-money when the price of the underlying is less than exercise price, out-of-the money when the current price exceeds the exercise price, and at-the-money when the exercise price is equal to the current price.

5. Consider a corn farmer and a canning company that uses the corn in the operation of its business. The concern of the farmer is that the price of corn will decline, thereby forcing him (or her) to sell his corn at a lower price. The concern of the canning company is that the price of corn will increase, resulting in a rise in its production costs. Consider first the farmer; suppose the corn will be available at a time when the farmer can sell a corn futures contract to deliver corn for  $\$X$  per bushel. The number of bushels expected to be sold will determine how many bushels of corn the farmer will seek to deliver. By selling futures, the farmer has locked in a price of  $\$X$  per bushel. Consequently, even if the price of corn is  $\$X - 2$  per bushel, the farmer will receive  $\$X$  per bushel. If instead, the price of corn is  $\$X + 2$  per bushel, the farmer has given up the opportunity to benefit from a higher price because he has agreed to accept  $\$X$  per bushel.

Now let's look at the canner. By buying a corn futures contract, the canner can assure that the price at which it must purchase corn will be no higher than  $\$X$  per bushel. So, if corn increases to  $\$X + 2$  per bushel, the canner only needs to pay  $\$X$  per bushel. In contrast, if the price of corn decreases to  $\$X - 2$  per bushel, the canner gave up the opportunity to benefit from a lower cost for corn.



**FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

**Answers**

1. Congress, legislation, Internal Revenue Code; Internal Revenue Service (IRS), interprets, adds, implements; IRS, providing, processing, collecting, explaining, rulings
2. income tax, 1909, simple, complex; analyst, today, future; after, performance, changing
3. marginal, defines, bracket, dollar; average, ratio, paid; progressive, average, higher; investment, financing, taxable, marginal
4. shareholders, dividends, twice, corporate, shareholders', corporation, third; triple, dividends-received; recipient, dividends, dividend, taxable; dividends-received, increases, return, investing
5. accelerated, straight-line; depreciation, rate, physical, effect, income; uniformity, depreciation, taxpayers, calculations, accelerated, shorter
6. capital gain, realized, sold, paid; treatment, lower, tax
7. Investment, ITC, stimulate, reducing, computed; ITC, reinstated, Congress, spending; credits, deductions, reduce, deduction, indirectly
8. net operating loss, deductions, income; back, preceding, forward, future, reduce; back, forward

9. worldwide, income; Nonresident, seat, management, corporate; tax, no, minimal; havens

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

- The following are the main kinds of taxes:
  - Income taxes are taxes based on the amount of income earned.
  - Employment taxes are also based on wage and salary income and paid by both the employee and employer for Social Security, Medicare, and retirement.
  - Excise taxes are a simple way of augmenting revenue by charging tax on certain commodities such as alcoholic beverages, tobacco products, telephone service, and gasoline.
  - Import and export taxes, also known as tariffs, are taxes from trading with foreign countries.
- Investors receive a tax break on dividend income. Because of this, investors require a lower return on these types of securities which means the cost of capital is lower for the firm that issued the securities. A firm's dividend income is not taxed, whereas interest income is taxed like any other income. Dividends paid by a firm are not deductible, whereas interest paid by a firm is fully deductible. The tax treatment of dividends and interest influences the financial decision-making because of its affect on the cost of capital.
- The modified accelerated cost recovery system (MACRS), has four features:
  - The depreciation rate used each year is either 150% or 200% of the straight-line rate, depending on the type of property, applied against the undepreciated cost of the asset.
  - The salvage value of the asset is ignored, so the depreciable cost is the original cost and the asset's value is depreciated to zero.
  - A half-year of depreciation is taken in the year the asset is acquired, no matter whether it is owned for one day or 365 days.

- The depreciation method is switched to the straight-line method when straight-line depreciation produces a higher depreciation expense than the accelerated method.

Because the MACRS is an accelerated method, depreciation expenses are greater sooner, thus reducing taxable income and tax rates when compared to straight-line. Straight-line depreciation is acceptable in cases where firms may not be able to make the best use of quicker depreciation that is offered by MACRS. Some companies use both methods, MACRS for tax purposes and straight-line for financial reporting purposes. This results in a difference in taxable income and may create deferred tax liabilities.

4. Taxes are of great concern because tax rates change often and the financial analyst needs to consider this dynamic tax environment when making an evaluation of a firm's future cash flows. Understanding foreign and domestic tax rates provides more accurate analyses and insight into the corporation's decision making process. Along with taxes, depreciation rates are very important to consider, despite the fact that they are not a cash flow. Depreciation still influences a firm's taxes by reducing taxable income, which is a cash flow.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. a. Using straight-line depreciation method: The depreciation allowance is  $\$56,000/7 = \$8,000$  per year. Recall that only half can be taken the first year with the remainder taken at the end, so the depreciation schedule is as follows:

Year	Depreciation Allowance
1	\$4,000
2–7	\$8,000
8	\$4,000

- b. Using MACRS depreciation method, the depreciation schedule is as follows:

Year	Depreciation Allowance
1	$\$56,000(0.1429) = \$8,002.40$
2	$\$56,000(0.2449) = 13,714.40$
3	$\$56,000(0.1749) = 9,794.40$
4	$\$56,000(0.1249) = 6,994.40$
5	$\$56,000(0.0893) = 5,000.80$
6	$\$56,000(0.0892) = 4,995.20$
7	$\$56,000(0.0893) = 5,000.80$
8	$\$56,000(0.0446) = 2,497.60$

2. Depreciation tax shield is the product of the depreciation expense and the tax rate:

Year	Depreciation Expense	Depreciation Tax Shield
1	\$8,002.40	\$2,400.72
2	13,714.40	4,114.32
3	9,794.40	2,938.32
4	6,994.40	2,098.32
5	5,000.80	1,500.24
6	4,995.20	1,498.56
7	5,000.80	1,500.24
8	2,497.60	749.28
Total	\$56,000.00	\$16,800.00

3. Income from operations:  $\$4,000,000$   
 plus 20% of dividend income:  $\underline{\quad 100,000 \quad}$   
 Taxable income  $\$4,100,000$   
 Tax liability = Taxable income  $\times$  Tax rate =  $\$4,100,000 (0.35)$   
 $= \$1,435,000$

4. Application of net operating loss to prior years' taxable income results in a refund of \$507,500:

Years	Refigured Taxable Income	Refigured Tax	Refund of Prior Taxes Paid	Amount of Loss Applied
1998	\$0	\$0	\$0	\$0
1999	0	0	245,000	700,000
2000	0	0	175,000	500,000
2001	0	0	87,500	250,000
Total			\$507,500	\$1,450,000

Total refund is \$270,000.

\$550,000 may be carried over to future taxable income because a total of \$1,450,000 of the \$2,000,000 loss is applied against 1999, 2000, and 2001 taxable income.



# Financial Statements

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

### Answers

1. Financial, operating, financing, investment; information, investors, creditors, assess, earnings, cash, earnings
2. data, financial, management, generally accepted accounting principles, GAAP; balance, condition, position, assets, liabilities, equity, fiscal, historical
3. balance, assets, future, inflows, liabilities, creditors, outflows, equity, shareholders', stockholders', ownership
4. Liabilities, current, long-term, deferred; operating, one; Accounts, accrued, current portion, short-term; Long-term, beyond; notes, bonds, capital lease, pension
5. Equity, interest; common, preferred; book value, equity; sum, retained, common, preferred, historical
6. Preferred, preferred, stock, balance sheet; remainder, common; common, paid-in, retained
7. income, summary, revenues, expenses; profit, loss, operating, financing

8. cash flows, cash, operating, investment, financing; cash flows, operating, investing, financing; selling, assets, issuing, securities, operations
9. operations, indirectly; investing, financing; investing, investments, disposal, acquisitions, divestitures; financing, sale, repurchase, stock, issuing, retirement, debt, payment, dividends
10. equity, shareholders', equity; balance, income, analyst, equity; balance, number, shareholders' equity, exercise, options, repurchased

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. The financial statements are created based on assumptions that affect the use and interpretation of financial data:
  - Transactions are recorded at historical cost so values reported in statements are not market or replacement values.
  - The dollar is the unit of measure.
  - The statements are recorded for specified periods of time such as fiscal year or quarter. Fiscal year end is usually chosen to coincide with the firm's lowest amount of operating cycle activity.
  - Accrual accounting and the matching principle are used to prepare statements. This means income and revenues are matched in timing such that income is recorded in the period in which it is earned and expenses are reported in the period in which they are incurred.
  - Firms are expected to always be a going concern.
  - Full disclosure requires providing more information than what is reported on the financial statements.
  - Statements are to be prepared and interpreted conservatively.
2. The two major categories of assets are current assets and noncurrent assets. Current assets are those assets that will be used or converted to cash in one year or one operating cycle and noncurrent assets are assets such as plant assets, intangibles, and investments.
3. Intangible assets are long-term investments and are the current value of nonphysical assets. Examples of intangible assets are:

- A patent that gives the exclusive right to produce and sell a particular asset
  - A copyright that gives the exclusive right to publish and sell a literary, artistic, or musical composition
  - Goodwill that is created when one company buys another company at a premium
4. Four different labels are applied to the number of shares of a corporation on a balance sheet:
- The number of shares authorized by shareholders
  - The number of shares issued and sold, which can be less than those authorized by shareholders
  - The number of shares currently outstanding, which can be less than the number of shares issued if the corporation has repurchased some of its issued stock or has sold less than what is authorized
  - The number of shares of treasury stock, that is, repurchased stock
5. Through the analysis of individual cash flows, investors and creditors can examine the following characteristics of a business:
- Whether financing is internally or externally generated
  - Whether the firm is able to cover all debt obligations
  - Whether the firm is able to afford expansion
  - Whether the firm is able to pay dividends
  - Whether the firm has financial flexibility

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1.

Cash	\$15,000	Accounts payable	\$34,000
Inventory	27,500	Notes payable	3,000
Gross plant and equipment	50,000	Long-term debt	26,000
Accumulated depreciation	17,500	Common equity	12,000
Net plant and equipment	<u>32,500</u>		
Total assets	\$75,000	Total liabilities and equity	<u>\$75,000</u>

Solution requires using the following relationships:

- Total assets = Total liabilities and equity
- Gross plant and equipment – Accumulated depreciation = Net plant and equipment
- Current assets + Net plant and equipment = Total assets
- Current liabilities + Notes payable + Long-term debt + Common equity = Total liabilities and equity

2. Earnings before taxes	\$45,000
Less: taxes (30% of \$45,000)	<u>13,500</u>
Net income	\$31,500
Preferred stock dividends	<u>20,000</u>
Earnings available for common shareholders	\$11,500
Common stock dividends (40% of \$11,500)	<u>4,600</u>
Retained earnings	\$6,900

3.

#### Statement of Cash Flows

Cash flow from operations		
Net income	\$64,000	
Increase in current assets	–22,000	
Decrease in current liabilities	+30,000	
Depreciation	<u>+60,000</u>	
Net cash flow from operations		\$152,000
Cash flow from investing activities		
Purchase plant and equipment	<u>–\$58,000</u>	
Net cash flow from investing activities		–58,000
Cash flow from financing activities		
Issue long-term debt	+15,000	
Repurchase of common stock	–45,000	
Dividends on common stock	<u>–10,000</u>	
Net cash flow from financing activities		<u>–40,000</u>
<b>Net cash flow</b>		<b><u>\$54,000</u></b>

# Mathematics of Finance

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

### Answers

1. time value, cash, different; future, valuable, today, invested, interest; compounding, discounting
2. lend, present; require, paid, future; future, present, interest; interest, use, length, time, risk, borrowed, repaid
3. basic,  $PV(1 + i)^N$ , present, future, future, present; interest, compounding; interest, interest, interest
4. financial, patterns, cash, perpetuities, annuity, deferred; timing; Tables, present value, future value, present, annuity, future, annuity
5. series, cash, cash, sum, present, future; equal, periodic
6. perpetual, ordinary; ordinary, end; level, beginning, annuity due
7. deferred, equal, after, period; deferred, present, ordinary, discounted, earlier

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. A dollar is worth less today than a dollar some time in the future if that dollar is invested such that it earns interest in the future. A dollar is worth more today than a dollar some time in the future if that dollar has no investment opportunity. If the dollar is not invested, no investment opportunities can come to pass. The value the dollar holds is in its liquidity, which gives the investor the flexibility to invest the dollar when a future opportunity arises.
2. The comparison of alternative financing or investment opportunities is difficult when interest rates do not have comparable terms. In order for comparisons to be done, the rates must be converted to a common unit. Two ways to convert interest rates stated over different time intervals into a common measure are to use the annual percentage rate (APR) and the effective annual interest rate (EAR). Annualizing the rates is an easy conversion and simplifies the comparison. The annualized rate is the stated rate of interest per compound period times the number of compounding periods in a year.
  - The APR ignores compounding, thus understating the true annual rate of interest when the interest is compounded before the year's end.
  - The effective annual rate (EAR) is the true economic return for a given time period because it accounts for compounding of interest. This form is the most useful to compare interest rates.

## CHAPTER 7 PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. Given:

$$r = 7.5\% \text{ or } 0.075$$

$$PV = \$500$$

Solve:  $FV$  for different values of  $t$

$$\text{a. } \$500(1 + 0.075)^1 = \$500(1.075) = \$537.50$$

$$\text{b. } \$500(1 + 0.075)^5 = \$500(1.4356) = \$717.80$$

$$\text{c. } \$500(1 + 0.075)^{10} = \$500(2.0610) = \$1,030.50$$

2. Given:

$$r = 7.5\% \text{ or } 0.075$$

$$FV = \$500$$

Solve:  $PV$  for different values of  $t$

$$\text{a. } \$500 \frac{1}{(1 + 0.075)^1} = \$500(0.9302) = \$465.10$$

$$\text{b. } \$500 \frac{1}{(1 + 0.075)^5} = \$500(0.6966) = \$348.30$$

$$\text{c. } \$500 \frac{1}{(1 + 0.075)^{10}} = \$500(0.4852) = \$242.60$$

3. Given:

$$r = 4.5\% \text{ or } 0.045$$

$$PV = \$1,000$$

Solve:  $FV$  for a variety of different interest scenarios

$$\text{a. } \$1,000(1 + 0.045)^3 = \$1,000(1.1412) = \$1,141.20$$

$$\text{b. Total interest earned} = \$1,141.20 - 1,000 = \$141.20$$

c. If Natalie would have withdrawn all her interest each year, she would have earned  $\$1,000 \times 0.045 = \$45$  interest each year. For the three years, she would have earned  $3 \times \$45 = \$135$ .

4. Since growth rate = annual interest rate = average annual return, use the basic valuation equation and solve for the rate that doubles every dollar he invests.

$$FV = PV(i+r)^t \Rightarrow \$2 = \$1(1+r)^5 \Rightarrow \frac{\$2}{\$1} = (1+r)^5$$

$$\Rightarrow r = \sqrt[5]{\frac{\$2}{\$1}} - 1 \Rightarrow r = 0.1487 = 14.87\%$$

5. Given:

$$r = 5\% \text{ or } 0.05$$

$$PV = \$4,000$$

$$FV = \$4,000 + 2,000 = \$6,000$$

$$FV = PV(i+r)^t \Rightarrow \$6,000 = \$4,000(1+0.05)^t \Rightarrow \frac{3}{2} = (1.05)^t$$

$$\Rightarrow \frac{\ln(3/2)}{\ln(1.05)} = t \Rightarrow t = 8.31 \text{ years}$$

6. To accurately compare these quotes, convert them all to EAR.

Bank A:  $\text{EAR} = (1 + \frac{0.145}{1})^1 - 1 = 14.5\%$  because it is already compounded annually.

Bank B:  $\text{EAR} = (1 + \frac{0.14}{12})^{12} - 1 = 14.93\%$

Friend:  $\text{EAR} = e^{0.1375} - 1 = 14.74\%$

Bank A provides the better rate.

7.  $\text{APR} = 2.9\% \times 12 \text{ months} = 34.8\%$

$\text{EAR} = (1 + \frac{0.348}{12})^{12} - 1 = 40.92\%$

Because the customer is actually paying 40.92% on unpaid balances, it might be in the customer's best interest to transfer the balance to a credit card charging a lower interest rate or to pay off the credit card altogether and ask for a lower interest rate.

8. Given:

$$\begin{aligned} r &= 10\% \\ CF_0 &= \$150 \\ CF_1 &= \$300 \\ CF_2 &= \$225 \\ CF_3 &= \$410 \end{aligned}$$

Solve: *FV* at end of third period

$$\begin{aligned} FV &= \$150(1+0.10)^3 + \$300(1+0.10)^2 + \$225(1+0.10)^1 + \$410(1+0.10)^0 \\ &= \$199.65 + \$363 + \$247.50 + \$410 \\ &= \$1,220.15 \end{aligned}$$

9. Given:

$$\begin{aligned} CF_1 &= \$2,500 \\ CF_2 &= \$3,000 \\ CF_3 &= \$5,000 \\ CF_4 &= -\$2,500 \\ r &= 12\% \end{aligned}$$

Solve: *PV* as of the end of period 0

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= \frac{\$2,500}{(1+0.12)^1} + \frac{\$3,000}{(1+0.12)^2} + \frac{\$5,000}{(1+0.12)^3} - \frac{\$2,500}{(1+0.12)^4} \\ &= \$2,232.14 + 2,391.58 + 3,558.90 - 1,588.76 \\ &= \$6,593.86 \end{aligned}$$

10. Given:

$$\begin{aligned} CF &= \$2,400,000 \\ T &= 20 \\ r &= 10\% \end{aligned}$$

Solve: *PV* of annuity due

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= \$2,400,000 + \$2,400,000 \sum_{t=1}^{19} \frac{1}{(1+0.10)^t} \\ &= \$2,400,000 + \$2,400,000(8.3649) \\ &= \$2,400,000 + \$20,075,760 = \$22,475,760 \end{aligned}$$

11. Given:

$$CF = \$20,000$$

$$T = 4 \text{ (deferred 8 years)}$$

$$r = 7\%$$

Solve: *PV* of deferred annuity

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= \$20,000 \left( \sum_{t=1}^4 \frac{1}{(1+0.07)^t} \right) \left( \frac{1}{(1+0.07)^8} \right) \\ &= \$20,000(3.3872)(0.5820) \\ &= \$39,427.01 \end{aligned}$$

# Principles of Asset Valuation and Investment Returns

## **FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

### **Answers**

1. financial, good, bad; good, increase, bad, won't; good, bad, benefits, outweigh, costs; best, financial, financed
2. discount, capitalization, translate, present; discount, pay, right; return, requires, price, expected; single, series, series, perpetual, present, amount, timing, discount
3. averse, risk; higher, uncertain; Buyers, sellers, buy, sell, profitable; over-, under-; balance, equilibrium
4. price, highest; restrictions, buying, selling; limit, costs, highest
5. inverse, value, discount, higher, discount, lower, value, lower, discount, higher, value
6. return, benefit; change, value, appreciation, depreciation, flow, dividend, interest, both, flow, value
7. return, yield; return, yield, annual, average; return, internal, IRR; average, geometric, arithmetic, compounding

8. discount, cost, future, internal; internal, inflows, same, internal
9. effective, compounding; reinvested, different, modified internal, MIRR

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. The reason for the inverse relation between the discount rate applied to future cash flows from an investment and the value of the investment today can be explained mathematically taking into consideration the basic valuation formula for future value and present value. When the present value is calculated, the discount rate assumes its position in the denominator of the formula with the future value in the numerator. The larger the discount rate, the larger the denominator, which in turn results in a smaller value after dividing the numerator by the denominator, hence a smaller present value. The smaller the discount rate, the smaller the denominator, which in turn results in a larger value after dividing the numerator by the denominator, hence a larger present value. For a direct application of this question, see problem one in the Problems section.
2. The investor must consider his or her personal level of risk aversion which is represented by the discount rate. Risk averse investors avoid risky investments regardless of the chance of receiving higher returns.  
Timing and frequency of future cash flows also are important. Taken with the discount rate, they will influence the decision on whether to make the investment. If potential investments have similar risks and cash flows, then increased frequency of cash flows indicates the preferred investment. When investments have dissimilar risks, then the present value of each investment should be examined in order to choose the preferred investment.
3. The average annual return is the geometric average annual return. Unlike the arithmetic annual return, the geometric average annual return includes compounding when calculating the rate of return. The arithmetic average annual return calculates a flat constant return rate because it does not incorporate the interest on interest that is earned. The preferred annual return is the one that incorporates compounding, hence the geometric average allows for more precise assessment.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. While the answer is intuitive, the step-by-step solutions should clarify the mathematics of the problem:

$$\text{Using the 5\% discount rate: } PV = \frac{\$500}{(1 + 0.05)^1} = \$476.19$$

$$\text{Using the 6\% discount rate: } PV = \frac{\$500}{(1 + 0.06)^1} = \$471.70$$

Note: Compare the denominators. Because 1.05 is less than 1.06, this indicates that the result from dividing the future value by 1.05 will yield a higher value than dividing by 1.06. This higher value translates into a higher present value, or up-front cost that Karen must pay for the investment. Depending on Karen's available funds that she now has to invest, she is better off investing at the higher discount rate because she will be required to pay less for it up front than if she chooses the lower rate. Knowledge of the actual future value and actual discount rates are unnecessary as long as one knows the same future value is being divided by two discount rates, one larger than the other.

2. This investment involves perpetual cash flows. Therefore,

$$PV = \frac{\$1,500}{0.10} = \$15,000$$

- If the investor pays more than \$15,000, then less than 10% is earned.
- If the investor pays less than \$15,000, then more than 10% is earned.
- If the investor pay \$15,000, the investor earns 10%.

3. Given:

$$PV = \$3,000$$

$$FV = \$5,500$$

$$\begin{aligned} CF &= \text{none} \\ N &= 4 \text{ years} \end{aligned}$$

Solve: The average annual return on the investment,  $i$

Using a financial calculator:  $i = 16.36\%$

Or

$$\begin{aligned} \$5,500 &= \$3,000(1+i)^4 \\ i &= \sqrt[4]{\frac{\$5,500}{\$3,000}} - 1 = 16.36\% \end{aligned}$$

4. a. Given:

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= \$100,000 \\ CF_1 &= \$20,000 \\ CF_2 &= \$40,000 \\ CF_3 &= \$25,000 \\ CF_4 &= \$35,000 \end{aligned}$$

Solve:  $i$

Using a financial calculator,  $i = 7.31\%$ .

b.

$$\begin{aligned} PV &= \frac{\$20,000}{(1+0.10)} + \frac{\$40,000}{(1+0.10)^2} + \frac{\$25,000}{(1+0.10)^3} + \frac{\$35,000}{(1+0.10)^4} \\ &= \$135,758.17 \end{aligned}$$

$$5. \text{ a. } FV = \$25,000(1+0.08) + \$27,000(1+0.12) + \$31,050(1+0.15)$$

$$\text{Or } FV = (((\$25,000(1.08))(1.12))(1.15))$$

$FV = \$34,776$  at the end of the third year.

$$\text{b. } i = \sqrt[3]{\frac{\$34,776}{\$25,000}} - 1 = 11.63\% \text{ per year}$$

# Valuation of Securities and Options

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

### Answers

1. common, ownership; Shares, perpetual, maturity; Owners, right, dividends, guaranteed; dividends, constant, constant
2. Notes, bonds, interest, semiannually, principal, face; percentage; constant, straight, zero, maturity
3. Dividend Valuation, DVM, value, stock, dividend, constant, constant; value, share, dividend, difference, required, return, growth, dividends; required, return, stock, dividend, capital; growth, dividend, lower, greater, greater, less, reinvest, lower
4. dividends, constant, value, present, dividends, period, perpetuity; required, return, RRR, compensate, time value, uncertainty, future, flows
5. Opportunity, earned, alternative, similar; minimum, required, return, discount, time value, risk; dividend, price, grow, capital; capital, taxes, taxes, capital, sold
6. bonds, value, coupon, yield; coupon, yield, more, maturity, premium; coupon, yield, less, discount; coupon, valued

7. right, buy, sell; not, stock, exchange, traded; buy, call; buy, exercise, strike, expiration; sell, put
8. convertible, stock, investor; straight, without, stock; Callable, issuer, buy, investor, price, call, prior, convertible, callable

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. If a bond's present value is greater than its maturity value, it sells at a premium because investors will pay more for a bond if it pays more than the going rate for bonds of similar risk. If the bond's present value is equal to its maturity value, then the bond sells at par. If the bond sells below its maturity value, it is trading at a discount because investors are not going to pay the maturity value for a bond that pays less than the going rate.
2. All three types of securities are valued by the present value of all future cash flows expected to be received. With shares of common stock, the value is equal to the present value of all dividends expected to be received from that share. As mentioned previously, common stock has no maturity so the value is the present value of an infinite stream of dividends. One catch is that the dividends are neither fixed nor guaranteed. Thus, the value of preferred stock is likewise the present value of all future dividends and the dividends are guaranteed. The value of a debt security is the present value of the sum of the present value of the interest payments and the present value of the maturity value.
3. The factors that affect the time value of an option are the value of the underlying asset, the exercise price, the time value of money, the expected volatility in the value of the underlying asset, and the time to maturity.
4. The Dividend Valuation Model is a formula that values a share of stock that either pays a constant dividend or that pays dividends that grow at a constant rate. The model states that the value of a share of stock is equal to the ratio of next period's dividend to the difference between the required rate of return and the growth rate of dividends.

It is useful and flexible, especially for dividends that have changing rates over time. Its meaning is intuitive—as the current dividend increases, the value of the stock increases, and in turn, if uncertainty increases, then the discount rate increases, which decreases the value of the stock.

5. The yield-to-maturity differs from the yield-to-call in that the number of periods for which the cash flows are discounted back is the number of periods to the expected call date and the call price of the bond is discounted back instead of the face value of the bond.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. The price of the bond will increase because the cash flows (coupon payments) are discounted at a lower rate. This increases the present value which is evident in the increased price of the bond.
2. Yes. According to the option, the investor has one month to decide to purchase 1,000 shares of XYZ Company for \$30 per share plus the option cost, which translates into \$1.50 more per share. Therefore the cost to the investor is \$31.50 per share. Because the current price is \$1 higher than the option price, the investor could exercise this option and then sell the shares in the open market for a profit of \$1 per share. The investor can exercise the option at any time up until and including the expiration date. Therefore if the price of the stock falls, the option will not be exercised and the investor will lose his \$1,500. If the investor thinks the stock will rise and wants more than \$1 per share profit, he should exercise the option immediately and hold the stock until it rises to what he considers an acceptable level.
3. ABC preferred stock  $\rightarrow r = \frac{\text{dividend}}{\text{price}} = \frac{\$3.45}{\$35} = 9.86\%$

Because the return on this investment is less than the required 10%, the investment would not be made.

4.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Price} &= \$11 \sum_{t=1}^3 \frac{1}{(1.08)^t} + \$125 \left( \frac{1}{(1.08)^3} \right) \\ &= \$28.35 + \$99.23 = \$127.58\end{aligned}$$

This investment should only be taken if the investors required rate of return is less than 8%. The current price is \$130, which is greater than the price at which it will be called, \$127.58, so the investor will not receive the 8% annual return on the investment.

5. The cash flows are as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}D_1 &= D_0(1 + 0.02) = 2.25(1.02) = \$2.30 \\ D_2 &= D_1(1 + 0.02) = 2.30(1.02) = \$2.35 \\ D_3 &= D_2(1 + 0.02) = 2.35(1.02) = \$2.39 \\ D_4 &= \$2.39 \\ D_5 &= \$2.39\end{aligned}$$

Since the third year begins the perpetuity:

$$\text{Price} = \frac{\$2.39}{0.16} = \$14.94$$

Therefore, the price per share for the stock that has this particular cash flow of dividends is:

$$\text{Price} = \frac{\$2.30}{1.16} + \frac{\$2.35}{(1.16)^2} + \frac{\$2.39}{(1.16)^3} + \frac{\$14.94}{(1.16)^3} = \$17.25$$

6. The bond pays \$60 every six months for ten periods. It will pay \$1,000 at maturity. The effective annual yield is 14% so the appropriate semiannual rate to discount the cash flows is 7%.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Price} &= \$60 \sum_{t=1}^{10} \frac{1}{(1.07)^t} + \$1,000 \frac{1}{(1.07)^{10}} \\ &= \$456.53 + \$508.40 = \$964.93\end{aligned}$$

Because the investor is holding the bond to maturity, the average annual yield is the yield to maturity on the bond, which is 14%.

7. Assume the interest is paid at the end of the year, then:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Return} &= \frac{\text{Ending price} - \text{Beginning price} + \text{Interest}}{\text{Beginning price}} \\ &= \frac{\$1,037.50 - 1,000 + 93.75}{\$1,000} \\ &= 13.125\%\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Coupon yield} = \frac{\text{Interest}}{\text{Price}} = \frac{\$93.75}{\$1,000} = 9.375\%$$

$$\text{Capital yield} = \frac{\$1,037.50 - 1,000}{\$1,000} = 3.75\%$$

8. The entire yield is the capital yield:  $\$1,000 = \$738.75(1 + r)^{15}$   
Solving algebraically for the rate:

$$r = \sqrt[15]{\frac{\$1,000}{\$738.75}} - 1 = 5.76\%$$

9. The round trip transactions cost of  $\$10.99 \times 2$  must be considered in the return calculation:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Return} &= \frac{\text{Sell price} - \text{Buy price}}{\text{Buy price}} \\ &= \frac{(1,000 \times 8.625 - 10.99) - (1,000 \times 5 + 10.99)}{(1,000 \times 5 + 10.99)} \\ &= \frac{\$8,614.01 - 5,010.99}{5,010.99} \\ &= 71.9\%\end{aligned}$$

10.

$$\$1,080 = \sum_{t=1}^8 \frac{50}{(1+r)^t} + \frac{\$1,000 + 100}{(1+r)^8}$$

Using a financial calculator:  $r = 4.82\%$  for six months. To find the effective annual yield to call:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{EAR} &= (1 + \text{Interest rate per period})^{\text{periods per year}} - 1 \\ &= (1.0482)^2 - 1 \\ &= 9.87\%\end{aligned}$$

# Risk and Expected Return

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

### Answers

1. uncertainty, knows, tax, demand, economy, interest; risk, uncertainty; Uncertainty, knowing; Risk, uncertainty, greater, uncertainty, greater, risk
2. Cash, sales, operating, financial; Sales, uncertainty, units, good, price; Operating, variable, fixed; Financial, financing
3. debt, interest, principal, payments, bondholders, owners; cash, debt, default, credit; default, debt
4. Reinvestment, reinvesting; yields, reinvest, interest, bond, return; yield, coupon, longer, more, more, reinvest; yield, time, maturity, greater, more, value
5. Interest, sensitivity, value, interest; Market, rate, discount, present, discount
6. Purchasing, price level; borrows, long, coupon, increases, benefits, increase, creditor, cheaper
7. Currency, domestic, foreign, value, future; Currency, cash, currency

8. Risk, dislike; averse, avoid; neutral; neutral, compensation, risk; preference, affinity
9. Diversification, vary, same, same; returns, correlated; tendency; returns, positively, same, negatively, opposite; uncorrelated, no
10. Risk, add, unsystematic, company; Risk, assets, market, systematic
11. William Sharpe, return, risk, assets; capital, pricing, CAPM; CAPM, return, asset, return, risk-free, risk; return, compensation, value, premium, compensation, risk; diversified, risk, assets, nondiversifiable, market, systematic
12. CAPM, risk, return, arbitrage, model, APM, Stephen Ross; APM, asset, identical, different, identically; returns, compensate, risk, risk, economic, company; theoretical, pricing, factor

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. The degree of operating leverage (DOL) is the ratio of the percentage change in operating cash flows to the percentage change in units sold. The degree of financial leverage (DFL) is the ratio of the percentage change in cash flows to the owners to the percentage change in operating cash flows. The degree of total leverage (DTL) is the product of DOL and DFL. DTL measures the sensitivity of the cash flows to owners to changes in unit sales.

The degree of operating leverage measures the sensitivity of operating cash flows to changes in sales and the degree of financial leverage measures the sensitivity of owners' cash flows to changes in operating cash flows. The combination is the degree of total leverage.

2. Default may result from many types of failures. Some examples are:
  - Failure to make interest or principal payments
  - Failure to make sinking fund payments
  - Failure to meet conditions of the loan
  - Bankruptcy

Financial managers are concerned about their own default because if there is a perception of lack of creditworthiness, then the firm's cost of capital increases. Likewise, if the managers invest in another firm's debt, they are risking their firm's funds. Default risk is comprised of sales risk, operating risk, and financial risk.

3. Prepayment risk and call risk are related to reinvestment risk. The rule to remember is that the greater the risk (i.e., cash flows), the greater the return.

- Prepayment risk is associated with loans that have a schedule for the repayment of principal with the right to repay without penalty prior to the end of the loan. The risk comes in when the interest rate falls below that of the loan; then the investor is paying more for the loan than initially contracted.

- Call risk is the risk that an issuer will call an investment product that has a callable option. Investors are compensated for this risk with a premium. However if the issue is called, then the investor must find another investment mechanism.

4. If an investor plans to hold a bond until its maturity, then the value is stable despite the changing interest rates. However, if the investor does not want to hold the bond to maturity, then the value is directly affected by the changing interest rates. As interest rates fall, bond values rise and vice versa, so if an investor plans to get rid of a bond, it needs to be done during times of low interest rates.

For a specific maturity and if the rate on the coupon is relatively great, then the bond's value is not subject to much change in the yield because the greater cash flows are not as affected by the discount rate. However if the bond has a longer maturity, then the bond's value is more affected.

5. Expected returns are a measure of future returns without delineating all the possible outcomes. The more the possible outcomes (range), the greater the risk. The standard deviation is a measure of the dispersion of risk which indicates the likelihood of all possible outcomes. The variance is the square of the standard deviation and has the same meaning as standard deviation. It is often referred to as the volatility.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

$$1. \text{ a. DOL at 10,000 units} = \frac{10,000(\$1,500 - 30)}{10,000(\$1,500 - 30) - \$175,000} = 1.01$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{b. DFL at 10,000 units} &= \frac{10,000(\$1,500 - 30) - \$175,000}{10,000(\$1,500 - 30) - \$175,000 - \$65,000} \\ &= 1.00 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{c. DTL at 10,000 units} &= \text{DOL} \times \text{DFL} \\ &= 1.01 \times 1.00 = 1.01 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{d. } Q_{BE} = \frac{\$175,000 + \$65,000}{(\$1,500 - 30)} = 164 \text{ units}$$

e. The sales volume is increased by 5,000 units, which indicates a 50% increase in units sold. Therefore,  $\text{DTL} \times 50\% = 1.01 \times 50\% = 50.5\%$  increase in the cash flows available to owners.

2. a.

Investment 1: expected value = \$1,075

Investment 2: expected value = \$1,075

b.

Investment 1: standard deviation = \$278

Investment 2: standard deviation = \$388

Investment 1:

$p_n$	$x_n$	$p_n(x_n - E(x))^{2*}$	
	\$500	213,906	
	400	14,063	
	<u>175</u>	<u>115,719</u>	
$E(x) =$	\$1,075	343,688	$\sigma(x) = \$586.25$

Investment 2:

$p_n x_n$	$p_n(x_n - E(x))^2$ <sup>a</sup>	
\$375	45,156	
400	14,063	
<u>300*</u>	<u>16,633</u>	
$E(x) = \$1,075$	75,852	$\sigma(x) = \$275.41$

<sup>a</sup> Actual value is rounded appropriately.

c. *Investment 1 is riskier.* Investment 1 provides the same expected return, but has a higher standard deviation than Investment 2.

3. a.  $r_f = 6\%$      $r_m - r_f = 4\%$

Security	Expected Return
A	$6\% + 0.85(4\%) = 9.4\%$
B	$6\% + 1.00(4\%) = 10\%$
C	$6\% + 1.25(4\%) = 11\%$
D	$6\% + 1.50(4\%) = 12\%$

b.  $B_p = \frac{0.85 + 1.00 + 1.25 + 1.50}{4} = 1.15$

c.  $r_p = \frac{0.094 + 0.10 + 0.11 + 0.12}{4} = 0.106$  or 10.6%

4. a. The covariance between Investment 1 and 2:

$$E(x)_{\text{Inv1}} = 0.15(0.18) + 0.30(0.50) + 0.55(0.40) = 0.397$$

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma(x)_{\text{Inv1}} &= \sqrt{0.15(0.18 - 0.397)^2 + 0.30(0.50 - 0.397)^2 + 0.55(0.40 - 0.397)^2} \\ &= 0.1012 \end{aligned}$$

$$E(x)_{\text{Inv2}} = 0.15(0.25) + 0.30(0.45) + 0.55(0.30) = 0.3375$$

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma(x)_{\text{Inv2}} &= \sqrt{0.15(0.15 - 0.3375)^2 + 0.30(0.45 - 0.3375)^2 + 0.55(0.30 - 0.3375)^2} \\ &= 0.0992\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Covariance} &= 0.15(0.18 - 0.397)(0.15 - 0.3375) \\ &\quad + 0.30(0.50 - 0.397)(0.45 - 0.3375) \\ &\quad + 0.55(0.40 - 0.397)(0.30 - 0.3375) \\ &= 0.0095\end{aligned}$$

b. The correlation coefficient =  $\frac{\sigma_{1,2}}{\sigma_1\sigma_2} = \frac{0.0095}{(0.1012)(0.0992)} = 0.9395$ .

c. Because the covariance is positive, the investment's returns covary together in the same direction. The correlation coefficient, which is positive and close to 1, means that the two investments tend to go in the same direction at the same time together.

# The Cost of Capital

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

### Answers

1. cost, capital, funds; borrowed, cost, interest; equity, cost, return, appreciation, dividends; capital, required, return
2. structure, debt, preferred, common; optimum proportions, capital
3. cost, debt, dollar, marginal, rate, tax, taxable; interest, taxable, effective, lower
4. debt, stock, flotation; payments, lawyers, accountants, bankers; all-in-cost, up
5. cost, preferred, dollar, issuing, preferred; Preferred, maturity; maturity, perpetual preferred
6. cost, common, common, internally, externally; Internally, retained, externally, shares, common
7. Dividend Valuation, DVM, common, price, stock, present, future, dividends, discounted, required, return, equity; dividends, constant, future
8. Capital Asset Pricing, CAPM, diversified, market; compensated, time, money, risk; compensation, time, money, risk premium, market, beta.

9. optimal capital, maximize, investment, marginal, capital, equal, benefit; optimal capital budget, expenditure, marginal, capital, internal, efficiency

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. The cost of capital and the required rate of return are similar. The difference comes in from the perspective. Cost of capital is from the firm's perspective as it is the amount the firm has to compensate investors in order to receive their money. Required rate of return is from the investor's perspective as it represents the personal return rate they require in order to temporarily part with their money and invest it in the company. These are marginal concepts because they represent the incremental cost or return associated with raising or investing an additional dollar.
2. The cost of capital is determined in three steps:
  - Calculate the proportions of each source of capital to be used.
  - Calculate the cost of each source of capital.
  - Calculate the weighted average cost of capital using these two measures.
3. It is appropriate to use the DVM when companies have stable dividend policies. The CAPM relies on historical values for stock returns and market returns and should be reserved for only publicly traded firms. A pitfall of this model is often the lack of data and even if data is available, the past is not indicative of future earnings.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. Yield on current debt:

$$\$900 = \sum_{t=1}^{10} \frac{\$35}{(1+r)^t} + \frac{\$1,000}{(1+r)^{10}}$$

$$r = 4.7813\%$$

$$\text{Effective annual yield} = (1 + 0.047813)^2 - 1 = 9.79\%$$

$$\text{After-tax effective yield: } r_d^* = 9.79\%(1 - 0.30) = 6.85\%$$

2. Without flotation costs:  $r_p = \frac{\$1.05}{\$35} = 3.00\%$

With flotation costs:  $r_p = \frac{\$1.05}{\$35(1 - 0.01)} = \frac{\$1.05}{\$34.65} = 3.03\%$

3. Given:

$$D_0 = \$3.12$$

$$P = \$65$$

$$g = 5\%$$

$$\begin{aligned} r_e &= \frac{\$3.12(1 + 0.05)}{\$65} + 5\% \\ &= 5.04\% + 5\% = 10.04\% \end{aligned}$$

4. Given:

$$r_f = 4\%$$

$$r_m = 11\%$$

$$B = 1.35$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 r_e &= 4\% + 1.35(11\% - 4\%) \\
 &= 4\% + 9.45\% = 13.45\%
 \end{aligned}$$

5. Estimation of the cost of capital for Sutton, Inc.:

Given:

$$\begin{aligned}
 r_d &= 8\% \\
 D_p &= \$2.00 \\
 P_p &= \$30 \\
 P &= \$25 \\
 D_1 &= \$1.50 \\
 g &= 5\% \\
 t &= 40\%
 \end{aligned}$$

Solve: Cost of capital ( $r_w$ ) for alternative financing proportions

Calculation of costs of sources of funds:

$$\text{Cost of debt} \quad r_d^* = 0.08(1 - 0.40) = 0.08(0.6) = 0.048$$

$$\text{Cost of preferred equity} \quad r_p = \frac{\$2.00}{\$30.00} = 0.0667$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Cost of common equity} \quad r_e &= \left( \frac{\$1.50}{\$25.00} \right) + 0.05 \\
 &= 0.06 + 0.05 = 0.11
 \end{aligned}$$

Financing arrangement #1:

$$\begin{aligned}
 r_w &= [0.30(0.048)] + [0.10(0.0667)] + [0.60(0.11)] \\
 &= 0.0144 + 0.00667 + 0.066 \\
 &= 0.087 \text{ or } 8.7\%
 \end{aligned}$$

Financing arrangement #2:

$$\begin{aligned}
 r_w &= [0.50(0.048)] + [0.25(0.0667)] + [0.25(0.11)] \\
 &= 0.024 + 0.016675 + 0.0275 \\
 &= 0.0682 \text{ or } 6.82\%
 \end{aligned}$$

# Capital Budgeting: Cash Flows

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

### Answers

1. objective, wealth; investment, value; invest, tangible, intangible, income, cash, reinvest, pay
2. Capital, assets, notes, bonds, stock, short-term; capital, projects; factors, estimate, future, change, uncertainty, future
3. risk, sales, operating; Sales, uncertainty, sold, price, operating, uncertainty, operating, mix, operating; business, discount, return, capital, required, cost
4. budgeting, identifying, selecting, long, benefits, one; budgeting, ongoing; budgeting, strategy, objectives
5. length, risk, dependence; economic, useful, length, benefits; risk, nature; dependence, independent, mutually exclusive, contingent, complementary
6. difference, with, without, incremental; change, components, operating, investment, expenditures, acquire, disposing
7. simplest, outflow, acquired, inflow, outflow, economic; revenues, expenditures, taxes, working; operating

8. depreciation, depreciation tax-shield; outflow, inflow; accelerated, straight-line; accelerated, larger, sooner, straight-line
9. Salvage, not, depreciation; guess, asset, worth, useful; Salvage, dispose

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. The five stages of the capital budgeting process are:
  - Stage 1: Investment screening and selection. A project's cash flows are screened and selected according to their ability to fulfill corporate strategy.
  - Stage 2: Capital budget proposal. A capital budget is proposed for the selected projects.
  - Stage 3: Budgeting approval and authorization. Projects that are approved are included in the capital budget. More analysis is conducted prior to making expenditures.
  - Stage 4: Project tracking. Projects that are approved are tracked during the life of the project.
  - Stage 5: Postcompletion audit. Projects that are approved are audited from time to time in order to review if they still comply with corporate strategy.
2. The use of current assets are usually the focus of short-term investment decisions and don't necessarily entail long-term cash flow projections. Current assets are cash, marketable securities, accounts receivable, and inventory. With long-term investment decisions, cash flow projections are necessary as there is a concern for the time value of money and the day-to-day operating needs of the firm. A firm needs both current and long-term assets in order to function even during down times.
3. A firm must consider future cash flows and how these cash flows influence the assets already utilized by the firm. New projects may or may not adversely affect the current assets in place. Often, firms can take on additional projects if they already have the necessary assets in place. When decisions are made, capital rationing is a concern as a

company may not be able to financially take on all the projects it wants.

- An independent project is as the name implies, a project that does not rely on another project. Hence their cash flows are unrelated.
  - Mutually exclusive projects are projects in which the cash flows affect each other. In other words, the firm can either do one project or the other, but not both.
  - Contingent projects rely on the acceptance of another project.
  - Complementary projects are projects that positively influence other projects.
4. Cash flows from investments come from asset acquisition, asset disposition, taxes, and operations. All these cash flows include costs of assets, expenditures in the utilization and disposal of the assets, and the effect of taxes.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. Asset acquisition cash flow for Year 0 = (\$10,000) for the cost of the asset.  
 Operating Cash Flows for Year 1 through Year 5 = \$5,500 each year.  
 Asset disposition cash flow = \$0 as there is no salvage value.

#### Operating Cash Flows

Change in revenues	\$15,000	
Less change in expenses	<u>-8,000</u>	
Change in before-tax cash flow	\$7,000	
Less change in depreciation	<u>-2,000</u>	
Change in taxable income	\$5,000	
Less change in taxes	<u>-1,500</u>	⇒ 30% of \$5,000
Change in net income	\$3,500	
Plus change in depreciation	<u>+2,000</u>	
Change in after-tax cash flow	<u>\$5,500</u>	

2. Asset acquisition cash flow for Year 0 = (\$49,000) for the cost of the asset.  
 Operating Cash Flows for Year 1 through Year 7 = \$5,500 each year.  
 Asset disposition cash flow = \$7,500.

#### Operating Cash Flows

Change in revenues	\$18,000	
Less change in expenses	<u>-5,000</u>	
Change in before-tax cash flow	\$13,000	
Less change in depreciation	<u>-7,000</u>	
Change in taxable income	\$6,000	
Less change in taxes	<u>-1,500</u>	⇒ 25% of \$6,000
Change in net income	\$4,500	
Plus change in depreciation	<u>+7,000</u>	
Change in after-tax cash flow	\$11,500	

#### Asset Disposition

Cash inflow from sale of cookie press	\$10,000
Tax on sale of press	<u>-2,500</u>
Net cash flow form asset disposition	\$7,500

3. Asset acquisition cash flow for Year 0 = (\$30,000) for the asset.  
 Operating Cash Flows for Year 1 through Year 7 = \$3,300 each year.  
 Asset disposition cash flow = \$5,500.

#### Asset Acquisition

Cost of equipment	\$(20,000)
Installation	(8,000)
Spare parts inventory	<u>(2,000)</u>
Initial investment outlay	\$(30,000)

#### Operating Cash Flows

Change in revenues	\$0	
Less change in expenses	<u>-3,000</u>	
Change in before-tax cash flow	\$3,000	
Less change in depreciation	<u>-4,000</u>	⇒ \$28,000/7
Change in taxable income	\$(1,000)	
Less change in taxes	<u>-300</u>	⇒ tax savings
Change in net income	\$(700)	
Plus change in depreciation	<u>+4,000</u>	
Change in after-tax cash flow	\$3,300	

**Asset Disposition**

Salvage value	\$5,000
Tax on salvage value	<u>-1,500</u>
Net cash flow from asset disposition	\$5,500



# Capital Budgeting Techniques

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

### Answers

1. cost, pay, finance; cost, explicit, interest, implicit, price, common, return, suppliers, capital, value, risk; uncertain, greater
2. payback, length, money; initial, outflow, inflows, initial, outflow; payback, payoff, recovery
3. discounted payback, pay, original, discounted, payback, longer, discounted, cash, discounted
4. Net present, NPV, expected; net, difference, change; changes, inflows, investment, outflows, NPV, difference, inflows, outflows
5. NPV, future, time value, risk, future; NPV, maximize; NPV, determine, changes, profitability
6. investment, NPV, NPV, discount; investment, graphical, NPV, discount; NPV, range, discount
7. profitability index, PI, operating, inflows, investment, outflows; PI, benefit-cost, benefit, cost; PI
8. internal rate, IRR, discount, future, zero, IRR, discount, NPV, \$0; IRR, yield; mutually exclusive, IRR, not

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. The six capital budgeting techniques are:

- Payback period
- Discounted payback period
- Net present value (NPV)
- Profitability index (PI)
- Internal rate of return (IRR)
- Modified internal rate of return (MIRR)

When evaluating investment projects, the ones chosen should always maximize owner wealth. To determine if they will maximize shareholder wealth or not, cash flows, and their uncertainty from each investment should be estimated.

2. Payback and discounted payback periods:

- The sooner the payback, the better.

Net present value:

- $NPV > 0$  indicates the investment increases shareholder wealth—accept the project.
- $NPV < 0$  indicates the investment decreases shareholder wealth—reject the project.
- $NPV = 0$  indicates the investment does nothing to change shareholder wealth—indifferent about the project.

Profitability index:

- $PI > 1$  indicates the investment returns more—accept the project.
- $PI < 1$  indicates the investment returns less—reject the project
- $PI = 1$  indicates the investment returns nothing extra but loses nothing—indifferent about the project.

Internal rate of return:

- $IRR > \text{cost of capital}$  indicates the investment is expected to return more—accept the project.

- $IRR < \text{cost of capital}$  indicates the investment is expected to return less—reject the project.
- $IRR = \text{cost of capital}$  indicates the investment is expected to return what is required—indifferent about the project.

Modified internal rate of return:

- $MIRR > \text{cost of capital}$  indicates the investment is expected to return more—accept the project.
  - $MIRR < \text{cost of capital}$  indicates the investment is expected to return less—reject the project.
  - $MIRR = \text{cost of capital}$  indicates the investment is expected to return what is required—indifferent about accepting or rejecting the project.
3. The profitability index is a good evaluation technique. It considers a variety of factors such as all cash flows, the time value of money, the risk associated with these, and capital rationing. However, the PI is not foolproof. If projects require differing amounts to be invested at different times, then the PI may not coincide with NPV. Also, mutually exclusive projects are not comparable using PI.
  4. In a sense, the IRR is the discount rate that breaks even. It makes the present value of all expected future cash flows equal to zero assuming these cash flows are reinvested at the same IRR each time. The MIRR technique is much more realistic because it assumes that the reinvested rates vary. A drawback to IRR and MIRR is that while they consider all cash flows and their timing, they do not directly take risk into account. Risk is indirectly accounted for when using the measures in the actual act of discounting. Selection of IRR and MIRR should be taken cautiously as capital rationing and status (dependence, independence, mutual exclusivity) of a project influence the selection.
  5. When selecting the appropriate techniques, it is important to remember that discounted cash flows are preferred to the nondiscounted cash flow techniques although they may not necessarily be appropriate for all situations (although they are appropriate for most). The goal is to always maximize shareholder wealth.
    - If projects are independent and capital rationing is of no concern, then any of the discounted cash flow techniques are appropriate.

- Recall that for mutually exclusive projects, the NPV method leads to investing in projects that maximize wealth and if the capital budget is limited, the NPV and PI methods should be used.
- If the projects are so constrained that they are mutually exclusive, cost the same amount to start, and have similar risk, then use either NPV or MIRR.
- If projects are mutually exclusive with different risks and scales, then NPV should be used over MIRR. If capital rationing is necessary, then the NPV or PI are appropriate.
- Overall, NPV should guide project selection; in particular, NPV of the entire capital budget is the real concern.

In practice, more than one technique is used in order to give a more rounded view of the project. As mentioned above, discounted cash flow techniques (NPV, IRR, PI) are used as a primary method and payback period is used as a secondary method. IRR with NPV is being used more frequently.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. You are the manager and are considering the following two projects for investment:

	Year 0	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3
Project A	(\$10,000)	\$3,000	\$7,000	\$9,000
Project B	(\$5,000)	\$3,000	\$4,000	\$5,000

- a. Project A takes two years in order to regain the initial investment of \$10,000.  
Project B takes two years in order to regain the initial investment of \$5,000.

b.		Discounted Cash Flows
Project A		
Year 1	\$3,000	$[1/(1 + 1/10)] = \$2,727$
Year 2	\$7,000	$[1/(1 + 1/10)^2] = \$5,785$
Year 3	\$9,000	$[1/(1 + 1/10)^3] = \$6,762$
Project B		
Year 1	\$3,000	$[1/(1 + 1/10)] = \$2,727$
Year 2	\$4,000	$[1/(1 + 1/10)^2] = \$3,306$
Year 3	\$5,000	$[1/(1 + 1/10)^3] = \$3,757$

Project A takes three years in order to regain the initial investment of \$10,000.

Project B takes two years in order to regain the initial investment of \$5,000.

As a manager, you like the fact that the initial outlay for project B will be paid back quickly, however, this does not necessarily indicate that project B is the best project. If the required return or cost of capital was higher than 10%, then the discounted cash flow would have been a lesser amount and it would take longer to recoup the initial outlays for both investments.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{c. NPV for project A} &= \$2,727 + \$5,785 + \$6,762 = \$15,274 \\ \text{NPV for project B} &= \$2,727 + \$3,306 + \$3,757 = \$9,790 \end{aligned}$$

Both projects produce positive NPV, which is desirable of all projects.

$$\text{d. PI for project A} = \frac{PV \text{ cash inflows}}{PV \text{ cash outflows}} = 1.5274$$

$$PI \text{ for project B} = \frac{PV \text{ cash inflows}}{PV \text{ cash outflows}} = \frac{\$9,790}{\$5,000} = 1.958$$

The *PIs* indicate that for project A, for every \$1 outflow, there is approximately \$1.53 inflow and for project B, for every \$1 outflow, there is approximately \$1.96 inflow. It is necessary for cash inflow to be greater than cash outflow in order for a project to be considered.

e. IRR for project A =

$$\frac{\$3,000}{(1 + IRR)} + \frac{\$4,000}{(1 + IRR)^2} + \frac{\$5,000}{(1 + IRR)^3} - \$10,000 = 0$$

Using a calculator or trial and error, IRR for project A = 33.24%.  
 IRR for project B =

$$\frac{\$3,000}{(1 + \text{IRR})} + \frac{\$4,000}{(1 + \text{IRR})^2} + \frac{\$5,000}{(1 + \text{IRR})^3} - \$5,000 = 0$$

Using a calculator or trial and error, IRR for project B = 54.05%.

The IRR indicates the discount rate that would generate an NPV of \$0. It also reflects the assumption that cash flows are reinvested at the IRR rate. These rates are not necessarily realistic as investments that produce those types of returns would have to be very risky.

f. For project A:

$$FV = \$3,000(1.10)^2 + \$7,000(1.10) + \$9,000(1.10)^0 = \$20,330$$

$$PV = \$10,000$$

$$FV = PV(1 + \text{MIRR})^t$$

$$\$20,330 = \$10,000(1 + \text{MIRR})^t$$

$$(1 + \text{MIRR})^3 = 2.033$$

$$\text{MIRR} = \sqrt[3]{2.033} - 1 = 26.68\%$$

For project B:

$$FV = \$3,000(1.10)^2 + \$4,000(1.10) + \$5,000(1.10)^0 = \$13,330$$

$$PV = \$5,000$$

$$FV = PV(1 + \text{MIRR})^t$$

$$\$13,330 = \$5,000(1 + \text{MIRR})^3$$

$$(1 + \text{MIRR})^3 = 2.666$$

$$\text{MIRR} = \sqrt[3]{2.666} - 1 = 38.66\%$$

The MIRR reflects a more realistic rate of reinvestment of cash flows. While these rates are high, they are not as high as IRR. Still, in today's market, while these types of investments with these returns are possible, they would indicate risky investments.

- g. If both projects are independent, then both should be undertaken because they both have positive NPVs. This means they will both increase the value of the firm.
- h. If the projects are mutually exclusive, then project A should be undertaken because it increases the value of the firm more than project B. In particular, project A increases the value of the firm by \$5,274 whereas project B only increases the value of the firm by \$4,790.



# Capital Budgeting and Risk

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

### Answers

1. investment, industry; economic, market, taxes, interest, international
2. uncertainty, future, evaluating; opportunity, earn, same, risk; return, capital, additional, compensate, risk
3. risk, projects, total, standalone; assets, standalone, relevant; portfolio, returns, correlated; addition, portfolio, risk, portfolio
4. statistical, risk, project's, range, standard deviation, coefficient, variation; dispersion, greater, uncertainty
5. sensitivity, change, reestimating, scenarios; Sensitivity, scenario, what-if, outcomes, one
6. Simulation, two, more, same; computer, probability, outcomes, probability, variable, change; simulations, internal rates, frequency, return
7. option pricing, real, real options, ROV, beyond, net present value, supplemented, options; options, abandon, exercised, expand, defer, future; strategic, revised, strategic
8. valuation, Black-Scholes; Black-Scholes, five, valuation; sensitive, difficult, volatility, two, strategic, volatility, value, cost, capital, static

9. certainty, certain, equivalent, risky; certainty, approach, risk, separates, value, risk, period's, risk, preferences, incorporated; net present, interpreted, reliable, period's
10. single, capital, risks; applying, discounted, budgeting, rejection, overdiscounting, acceptance, underdiscounted

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. The range is a statistical measure that represents the distance between the two extreme outcomes of the probability distribution and is calculated as the difference between the best and the worst (largest and smallest) possible outcomes. The wider the range, the further apart are the two extreme possible outcomes, therefore implying increase in risk.

The standard deviation measures each possible outcome's deviation or difference from the expected value and the likelihood the outcome will occur. The larger the standard deviation, the greater the dispersion and, hence, the greater the risk.

Comparison is not feasible between standard deviations of different projects' cash flows if they have different expected values, thus the coefficient of variation translates the standard deviation of different probability distributions into a comparable measure. The coefficient of variation for a probability distribution is the ratio of its standard deviation to its expected value.

2. Sensitivity analysis illustrates the effects of changes in assumptions by changing one factor at a time. While this is helpful when isolating one factor, it is not very realistic when trying to view the effects of many factors changing during the life of a project. If the change of more than one variable at a time is desired, then simulation analysis is the analysis to use.

Simulation analysis is more realistic than sensitivity analysis because it projects for many variables simultaneously. This method should only be used with a computer as it is computationally expensive. Simulation analysis examines a project's total risk with generations of multiple scenarios. This is useful for the project, but not useful for the owner's portfolio, meaning that simulation analysis does not take into account the toll of the project's risk on the portfolio.

- lio. When studying a project's risk, its effect on the total risk of the other projects and the firm as a whole is necessary.
3. Financial leverage is debt obligation carried by the firm. In particular, it is the structured interest and principal payments that the firm must pay. The more debt a firm carries, the more financial leverage it has. Thus, the firm carries more risk because these debt obligations must be met. However, given the hierarchy of payoffs, if a firm is liquidated, debt holders receive their portion prior to equity holders. Therefore, debt financing increases the firm's risk of equity but for the debt holding investor, it is a less risky investment compared to the equity holder.
  4. When a firm wants to take on a new project for which it has no experience, the best way for that firm to gauge risk is to find a firm that is a pure play. A pure play is a firm whose only line of business is the one of interest to the firm looking to take on a similar project. In this manner, the firm can use the pure play firm as a model for how they might implement the project and assess the project's risk. The assessment of risk is a proxy from the pure play firm. The investigating firm may use the pure play firm's market beta in order to estimate the project's risk.
  5. The cost of capital is the amount the firm must pay creditors and investors in order to receive their investment in the company. In other words, it is how much the investors require in order to forgo use of their cash. Therefore the investors require adequate compensation for the time value of money and the probability of receiving these cash flows from the firm. To estimate the cost of capital, the cost of debt, preferred stock, and common stock are weighted and added to yield the weighted average cost of capital (WACC). This gives management an overall picture of their total costs to investors in order to receive their investment based on the risk of the project and investors' risk aversion level.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1.

$$B_{\text{asset}} = B_{\text{equity}} \left[ \frac{1}{1 + \frac{(1 - \text{marginal tax rate}) \text{debt}}{\text{equity}}} \right] = 1.05$$

(This is the beta to be used for the estimate of the project risk.)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Required rate of return} &= \text{Risk free rate} + B(\text{market risk premium}) \\ &= 5.5 + 1.05(12) \\ &= 18.1\% \end{aligned}$$

Because ABC's cost of capital is 15% and the required rate of return on this project is 18.1%, ABC should invest in this project. If the required rate of return were equal to the cost of capital, then ABC would technically break even and if the required rate of return for this project were less than the cost of capital, ABC would not invest in the project as it would not cover cost of capital.

2. a. The cash flow range for each project are:

$$\begin{aligned} R_A &= \text{Best possible outcome} - \text{Worst possible outcome} \\ &= \$1,300 - \$800 = \$400 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} R_B &= \text{Best possible outcome} - \text{Worst possible outcome} \\ &= \$3,00 - \$1,500 = \$1,500 \end{aligned}$$

b. The expected cash flows for each project are:

$$\begin{aligned} E(x_A) &= \sum_{n=1}^N x_n p_n \\ &= 0.25(\$1,300) + 0.40(\$1,500) + 0.35(\$800) \\ &= \$1,205 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 E(x_B) &= \sum_{n=1}^N x_n p_n \\
 &= 0.30(\$3,000) + 0.25(-\$1,000) + 0.45(\$1,500) \\
 &= \$1,325
 \end{aligned}$$

- c. The standard deviation of the possible cash flows for each project are:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sigma(x_A) &= \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^N P_n [x_n - E(x)]^2} \\
 &= \sqrt{0.25(1,300 - 1,205)^2 + 0.40(1,500 - 1,205)^2 + 0.35(1,300 - 1,205)^2} \\
 &= \sqrt{\$40,225} = \$200.56
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sigma(x_B) &= \sqrt{\sum_{n=1}^N P_n [x_n - E(x)]^2} \\
 &= \sqrt{0.30(3,000 - 1,325)^2 + 0.25(-1,000 - 1,325)^2 + 0.45(1,500 - 1,325)^2} \\
 &= \sqrt{\$2,296,875} = \$1,485.56
 \end{aligned}$$

- d.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Coefficient of variation for Project A} &= \frac{\text{Standard deviation}}{\text{Expected value}} \\
 &= \frac{\$200.56}{\$1,205} = 0.16644
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Coefficient of variation for Project B} &= \frac{\text{Standard deviation}}{\text{Expected value}} \\
 &= \frac{\$1,485.56}{\$1,325} = 1.1212
 \end{aligned}$$

- e. Using NPV analysis:

$$\text{NPV}_A = \$1,205 \sum_{t=1}^5 \frac{1}{(1.13)^t} - \$2,000 = \$2,238$$

$$\text{NPV}_B = \$1,325 \sum_{t=1}^5 \frac{1}{(1.18)^t} - \$1,000 = \$3,144$$

Because the projects are mutually exclusive, Project B should be chosen. Note the higher expected return for the higher expected risk that Project B carries (see NPV, standard deviation, and coefficient of variation).

f.

$$\text{NPV}_{B1} = \$1,325 \sum_{t=1}^5 \frac{1}{(1.19)^t} - \$1,000 = \$3,051$$

$$\text{NPV}_{B2} = \$1,325 \sum_{t=1}^5 \frac{1}{(1.18)^t} - \$1,800 = \$2,344$$

$$\text{NPV}_{B3} = \$1,000 \sum_{t=1}^5 \frac{1}{(1.18)^t} - \$1,000 = \$2,127$$

$$\text{NPV}_{B4} = \$1,000 \sum_{t=1}^5 \frac{1}{(1.19)^t} - \$1,800 = \$1,258$$

# Intermediate and Long-Term Debt

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

### Answers

1. loan, principal, end, intervals; lender, bondholder, interest; interest, end; fixed, variable, floating
2. property, secured, security, collateral; ability, payments, unsecured, debenture
3. Term, borrower, creditor, creditor, bank, insurance, finance; Term, maturity, fixed, fixed, demand
4. registered, bearer; registered, records, interest, principal, registered; bearer, possession, certificate, payment; interest, bearer, coupon, cashes
5. conversion, exchange, security, common stock; bondholder, attractive; price, increases
6. analyze, rate, default, rating; Moody's Investors, Standard & Poor's, Fitch; credit, cost, marketability; restricted, minimum; risk, greater, default, credit, greater, greater
7. rating, high, low, high; investment-grade, prime, A, B; Noninvestment-grade, B, speculative, high-yield, junk.

8. Rating, credit, character, capacity, collateral, covenants; Character, ethical, quality; Capacity, repay; assets, value, quality; Covenants, terms, conditions
9. funds, bond, lowest, retire, fall; highest, lowest, sell; debt; derivative, synthetically, fixed, floating, interest, currency, commodity, stock index

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. On debt obligations, the interest rate is calculated by the interest rate reset formula which makes use of the floating rate. The floating rate is found by adding the reference rate that is specified in the contract, and the quoted margin that is fixed over the debt's term. These rates do have collars, meaning that they have maximums and minimums.
2. Term loans are repaid in installments either monthly, quarterly, semi-annually, or annually according to an amortized schedule.

An interest-only loan means just that, no principal payments are made until the end of the term. What is paid according to a schedule are the interest payments. This kind of loan is also called a bullet loan because the last payment that includes the principal is a killer.
3. Both are debt obligations, also called certificates of indebtedness. They obligate the borrower to repay the amount borrowed, with interest, in a scheduled fashion. The difference between the two is that a bond has an indenture agreement indicating the rights and obligations of the borrower while a note does not. The indenture agreements also provide for a trustee to oversee the borrowing for the benefit of the bondholder. The note is a less formal agreement.
4. The basic features a bond issue are:
  - Denomination: par, face, or maturity value (i.e., the amount of the debt)
  - Term to maturity: the length of the life of the bond
  - Interest: the amount of the coupon paid per year
  - Security: some bonds are backed by collateral, others aren't

- Seniority: there is a seniority ranking
  - Retirement: through the use of trust funds, call, and put options
  - Convertibility: also use call and put options
5. A bond issuer may retire debt by either calling it before it reaches its maturity date or paying off a portion of it by buying it back from the bondholder. The process of retiring the debt through repurchase may either happen with individual investors or in the market place.
- Bonds are retired before maturity date if the current interest on the debt is lower than the debt they are paying. This means that they can get debt at a cheaper price than what they are now paying for it. Bonds may also be retired in order to improve the firm's debt rating. If the firm has too many bonds or too many bonds that are low grade, then retiring some of that debt will lessen their default rate. The issuer could also retire debt because they may not be receiving adequate tax deductions or they may need to generate funds.
6. A convertible bond has a provision built in so that the bondholder may exchange the bond issue for shares of stock. A warrant is the right to buy the common stock at the exercise price. It gives the bondholder the opportunity to buy the shares of stock and maintain possession of the bond. Detachable warrants may be separated from the debt and traded.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. Zero-coupon bonds would have more of a change in price because they are subject to more interest rate risk. A zero-coupon bond's entire cash flow is not received until maturity. Therefore, for the length of that maturity, its value is influenced by interest rate movements. The greater the coupon rate, the higher the price, which is calculated from cash flows that are received earlier and at regular intervals, than the zero-coupon bond. Therefore, the 8% coupon bond would not be as influenced by the interest rate changes and thus has less interest rate risk than the zero-coupon bond.

Likewise, because the 8% coupon bond has more frequent cash flows, this in turn means that it has greater reinvestment risk than the zero-coupon bond. The investor must find adequate investments fre-

quently to reinvest the 8% coupon's interest payments, but the investor has to find an alternative investment for the zero-coupon payoff just once.

2. a. The conversion price of the bond is the ratio of the face value of the bond to the price of a share of the common stock.

$$\text{Conversion price} = \frac{\$1,000}{45} = \$22.22$$

- b. The bond's market conversion price is the market value of the stock times the number of shares that can be exchanged.

$$\text{Market conversion price} = \$35 \times 45 = \$1,575$$

- c. The effective conversion price is the price that is paid for each share of common stock when the bond is converted.

$$\text{Effective conversion price} = \frac{\$1,575}{45} = \$35$$

- d. If the investor converts the bond into the shares, she or he will receive stock worth \$1,575. However if the investor accepts the call, she will receive \$1,800. The investor should accept the call. She would only convert the shares if the call price of the bond was less than \$1,575.
3. a. If the current market price is \$33 and the warrant entitles you to pay only \$20 a share, you should be willing to pay \$13 (the difference) for the warrant.
- b. Because there are five years until expiration, this will make the warrant more valuable as the stock has several years to increase in value. In essence, you will be paying a lower market value for the stock because of the warrant option.
4. a. The semiannual interest payments are:  $5\% \times 12 \text{ million} = \$600,000$ . There will be 16 payments in eight years and the maturity value of \$12 million will be received in the 16th period so the market value of the bonds is the present value of the expected future cash flows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Market value} &= \$600,000 \sum_{t=1}^{16} \frac{1}{(1.03)^t} + \$12,000,000 \frac{1}{(1.03)^{16}} \\ &= \$7,536,661.22 + \$7,478,003.27 = \$15,014,664.49\end{aligned}$$

- b. If KLH calls the bonds, it will pay 5% above the initial \$20 million, which equals \$12,600,000. If it buys the bonds on the open market, the premium on these bonds is tax deductible: \$15,014,664.49 – 12,000,000 = \$3,014,661.49 and it will cost the company 0.75 × \$3,014,661.49 = \$2,260,996.12 after taxes. Therefore, it would cost KLH \$2,260,996.12 + \$12,000,000 = \$14,260,996.12 to buy the bonds on the open market.

KLH should exercise the call. It would only cost the firm \$12,600,000 versus buying the bonds on the open market for \$14,260,996.12. If the bonds were callable at a higher price (for example: \$125), this would turn the tables and make it more cost effective for KLH to purchase bonds on the open market (because in this case the call would cost KLH \$15,000,000).

5. a. The present value of the bond is \$875 and the future value in two years is \$1,000. There are no other payments made because it is a zero-coupon bond, so the interest rate is:

$$\begin{aligned}\$1,000 &= \$875(1+r)^2 \\ r &= \sqrt{\frac{\$1,000}{\$875}} - 1 \\ r &= 6.9\%\end{aligned}$$

- b. The deductible interest expense per year is:

$$\text{For year 1} = 0.069 \times \$875 = \$60.38$$

$$\text{For year 2} = 0.069(\$875 + \$60.38) = \$64.54$$



**Common Stock****FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

**Answers**

1. stock; common, preferred; shares, certificates; shareholders, stockholders; return, dividends, cash
2. common; liability, shares, ownership, classified, voting, buy
3. shares, authorized; not; issued, actually, fewer, authorized; left, outstanding, issued; retired, treasury
4. Common, elect, directors, vote, merger, authorize, vote, amendments; classes, votes, percentages; controlling, retain
5. Cumulative, minority; cumulative, accumulate, pile, seats, governance, smaller
6. one, entire; classified, staggered; advantage, continuity; experienced, one year
7. additional, common, rights, rights, existing, maintain, holding
8. directors, dividend, obligation; cash; shares, property
9. reinvest, shares, dividend, DRP, shareholders, dividends, additional, cash; additional, outstanding, issued

10. split; divides, existing, more, portion, same; reverse, raises, reducing
11. dividend, decision, cash; no, growth, payout, low regular, periodic; Irrelevance, Bird, Tax-Preference, Signaling, Agency
12. repurchasing, cash, taxes; Cash, ordinary; repurchase, capital, price; higher, gains, lower

## **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

### **Answers**

1. Shareholders do not actually purchase a piece of the company per se, instead they buy the right to future income and are allowed to be involved in the firm's activities and decision making.
2. Preferred stockholders are given preference over common stockholders. This means that the company must give income to the preferred shareholders before the common shareholders. The same is true of dividends. Also, while dividends are not guaranteed to common shareholders, they are to preferred shareholders. Common shareholders have voting rights, whereas preferred shareholders do not. However, only when firms halt dividend payment, can preferred shareholders receive some temporary voting rights.
3. Common equity is created through residual ownership in a firm. This residual ownership is created by issuing shares of stock, protecting and maintaining of the firm's earnings, and reinvesting of earnings back into the firm, meeting creditor obligations, and paying any required dividends to preferred shareholders. Any remaining earnings may either be kept by the firm or paid out to common shareholders in the form of dividends.
4. A publicly held corporation is one whose shares of stock are traded in financial markets. Publicly held firms are subject to scrutiny and must meet the disclosure requirements set forth by the SEC. Because of this scrutiny and disclosure, public firms can raise outside capital easier than other types of firms because they are fairly transparent.

A privately held corporation is one whose shares are not traded in financial markets. If a private firm has less than 500 shareholders

or less than \$3 million of assets, registering with the SEC is optional. In general, a private firm is not required to disclose any information to the public or to the SEC. A private corporation can issue stock to a select few. These types of privately held firms are also called closely held firms. Ownership and management is selective, which also means that the shareholders in these firms are not well diversified as they are but a few holding much of one company. Because transparency is lacking with these firms, raising capital is difficult.

5. Reasons a company would pay a stock dividend:

- As a signal of information, such as to reveal good news about the firm's future prospects and not have to spend cash to do so.
- To reduce the price of the stock. Overvalued stocks are subject to higher costs and the payment of a dividend reduces the price of the stock, on average, by the amount of the dividend.

6. The board of directors makes the dividend payment decisions.

Dividend Date Time Line:

- Declaration date: The day the board of directors meets and decides on the dividend.
- Record date: The date specified by the board such that any shareholders who are on record as owning shares on this date are eligible to receive the dividend.
- Ex-dividend date: The date, established by the financial markets as four business days prior to the record date, that determines who receives the dividend (whoever purchased and held on to the shares prior to this date) and who does not (whoever buys the shares on or after this date).
- Payment date: The date the dividend checks are mailed.

7. Reasons for a reverse stock split:

- To raise the price to improve trading and reduce investors' transaction costs for trading in the stock, especially in light of flat commissions which assess the same fees no matter the price of the stock. So theoretically, an investor could pay more for the transaction fees than for the actual stock purchased.
- To raise the price up from a penny stock because penny stocks are viewed negatively.
- As a way to privatize a firm.

8. Reasons a company would repurchase its own stock:

- To inexpensively distribute cash to shareholders. Shareholders benefit from the tax treatment of capital gains over dividends.
- To reduce the number of shares outstanding in order to improve earnings per share.
- To reduce the equity in order to readjust the debt-to-equity ratio. This means that the firm has greater financial leverage, which increases the value of the firm.
- To creatively and painlessly reduce total dividend payments. The reduction in shares implies a total dividend reduction because the same amount of dividends per share can be paid but for fewer shares.
- To minimize agency costs by reducing any cash the management can consume as perquisites.
- To put the firm on a diet. Sometimes firms become too large and unmanageable. When cash is paid out, the value of the firm is reduced.
- To maximize shareholder wealth. If the firm has no profitable investment opportunities, then it is better to pay funds to the shareholders than to invest in negative NPV projects.

A company would repurchase its own stock using the following methods:

- A tender offer
- Open-market purchases
- A targeted share repurchase

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

$$\begin{aligned} 1. \text{ a. Dividends per share} &= \frac{\text{Common stock dividends}}{\text{Number of common shares outstanding}} \\ &= \frac{\$550,000}{1,300,000} = \$0.42 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{b. Dividends payout} &= \frac{\text{Common stock dividends}}{\text{Available earnings}} \\ &= \frac{\$550,000}{\$2,400,000} = 0.23 = 23\% \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 2. \text{ a. Market value} &= \text{Price per share} \times \text{Number of shares owned} \\ &= \$275 \times 300 = \$82,500 \end{aligned}$$

b. After the 3 for 1 stock split, the number of stocks you own has tripled to 900 shares. However the price per share then adjusts accordingly and is approximately \$91.67 per share. The market value is still the same:  $\$275/3 \times 900 = \$82,500$ .

After the 15% stock dividend, you own  $300 \times 1.15 = 345$  shares. The market value of your investment is still \$82,500 as now the shares are worth  $\$275/1.15 = \$239.13$  per share.

3. Under the ordinary voting procedure, you may cast some or all 500 votes for Ms. W. because one share equals one vote. Under the cumulative voting procedure, you may cast some or all of  $500 \times 4 = 2000$  votes for Ms. W.



# Preferred Stock

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

### Answers

1. preferred; Preferred, income, common; preferred, common; priority, preferred
2. preferred; preferred, first, common; dividends, cash, shares; preferred, quarterly, fixed, floating
3. Fixed, percentage, fixed; variable, adjustable-rate, quarterly, reset; perpetual, collar; issuer, costs, limited, investor, return, lower
4. auction, periodically; Remarketed, agent, tendered, offering; investor, resets, auction, remarketed
5. cumulative, dividend, before, common; noncumulative, not, forgotten, future; cumulative; arrearage, arrears; cumulative
6. conversion, conversion, common, preferred, common; price, ratio, value, common; preferred, premium
7. Callable, buy, shareholder; price; price, set, change, schedule; greater, stated
8. obligation, bondholders, creditors, assurance, sinking; trustee, funds, retire, sinking; preferred, dividend

9. features, package; attractive, cost; issuer, call, investor, conversion; returns, risk, flexibility, costs

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. No longer are only common shareholders allowed to share in the earnings of a firm. Participating preferred stock allows preferred shareholders to share as well. The sharing of earnings is conducted one of two ways, either in addition to the already stated preferred dividend or it can fluctuate along with the dividend for the common stock.

There are very few participating preferred stock issues because:

- Originally created as a substitute for debt, preferred stock was initially used by firms in failing health. Therefore the cash in hand, by way of dividend, is better than taking a chance on a sick firm's future earnings that may never materialize.
  - If a firm has participating preferred stock, it reduces the benefits to common shareholders because regardless of firm health, common shareholders are always the last to receive anything. However in good times, while the common shareholder is still the last to receive, there is at least more to receive after obligations (bondholders and preferred shareholders) are paid.
2. Convertible preferred stock and mandatory preferred stock both give the shareholder the right to exchange the preferred shares for common shares. Convertible preferred stock can convert at a predetermined rate of exchange while mandatory preferred stock must convert within a specified period of time.
- The issuer's perspective on mandatory convertible preferred is that it is beneficial because the firm is freed from its requirement to pay preferred dividends. For the investor, the time limitation on conversion is a cost as the preferred shareholder forfeits the dividend in place of a less profitable and fixed investment.
3. Yes, there are contingent voting rights attached to preferred stock. This means that the right to vote is invoked only when dividends have not been paid for some time. However, this right to vote is very limited.

4. To convert preferred stock into common stock requires investors to consider:

- The uncertainty of the common stock dividend
- The certainty of the preferred dividend
- The unlimited common stock price appreciation
- The limited preferred stock price appreciation

5. Advantages to issuing preferred stock:

- To raise capital in outside markets
- To maintain voting concentration for common shareholders
- Preferred is cheaper and less risky
- Preferred dividends are not taxes

Disadvantages to issuing preferred stock:

- Preferred stockholders have a claim on income and assets.
- Preferred shares have historically been issued by unhealthy firms.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. Dividend for one year =  $1,100,000 \times \$100 \times 8\% = \$8,800,000$   
Arrearage after four years =  $\$8,800,000 \times 4 = \$35,200,000$
2. Conversion value =  $500 \times 25 \times \text{Market price of common share}$   
Conversion value =  $500 \times 25 \times \$30 = \$375,000$
3. Dividends per share =  $0.0975(\$80) = \$7.80$  per share, per year  
Total dividends =  $\$7.80(\$3,000,000/80) = \$292,500$  per year



# Capital Structure

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

### Answers

1. debt, finance, capital; capital, equity, equity
2. Interest, financial; Financial, decisions, creditors; not
3. debt, equity, creditors; equity, debt, share, return, earnings
4. risk, standard, coefficient; larger, standard, coefficient, greater
5. rate, capitalization, discount, future, value; capitalization, future; uncertain, less, greater
6. premium, discount, income, discount, earnings, interest, free; greater, debt, greater, risk
7. tax shield; marginal, expense; marginal, interest, value
8. exceed, operating; taxes, loss, loss; loss, previous, income
9. limited, assets, debt, risky, creditors, unprofitable; conflict, shareholders', creditors'
10. bankruptcy, direct, indirect; Direct, accounting; indirect, difficult

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. Debt financing is can be more attractive than equity financing because of the interest and principal payments that are required. These steady streams of obligated cash flow (principal and interest payments) indicate the firm is able to maintain these payments as they are guaranteed obligations. All the interest paid is tax deductible. With equity financing, the cash flows (dividends) are neither guaranteed nor tax deductible.
2. Debt ratios differ across industries because the different industries use financial leverage differently. Some industries are prone to financial distress more than others and this is reflected in their ratios. Also, some industries receive tax benefits and are able to capitalize on that which improves their ratios.

Debt ratios differ within industries since firms within the industry may not be uniform. Also, since subsidiaries financials are subsumed into the parent's financials, the capital structure of the combined may differ from the components. Firms may use differing methods to calculate the ratios, hence the lack of similarity between firms in an industry.
3. The leverage effect is the use of financial leverage. Debt financing requires that principal and interest payments be paid: These payments are not optional. So, if earnings are inadequate, then the firm is obligated to cover these payments through other means and sources of capital. Firms may sell off assets, take on more debt, or issue secondary shares of stock in order to raise the funds to meet the debt payments.
4. The tax shield reduces the net income which is taxable income. Therefore, the value of the firm is being subsidized by the tax shield. The greater the debt, the greater the tax shield deducted from income.
5. The relationship between financial distress and capital structure is of a spiral nature. The more debt a firm takes on, the more of a tax shield they receive. However, the more debt the firm takes on, the less likely it becomes that it will be able to service the debt. When this happens, the firm expends other measures not to default on the debt and hence gets deeper into debt. Eventually the firm goes into financial distress followed by bankruptcy. Factors to be considered are:

- Causes to increase debt financing
  - Business risk
  - Sales risk
  - Operating risk
6. When making capital structure decisions, financial managers must consider the following factors and ask themselves a multitude of questions:
- Taxes: Can they benefit? How? Is there enough debt in the mix?
  - Risks: What types? Can they be removed or at least minimized?
  - Type of assets: Do they produce? Can they be liquidated? Is there enough equity in the mix?
  - Financial slack: Is it present? Does the firm need more or less?

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. Firm Z Debt ratio =  $\frac{\$34,000}{\$50,000} = 0.68$

Debt-to-assets =  $\frac{\$34,000}{\$84,000} = 0.405$

Firm Z's debt ratio of 0.68 means that it finances its assets using \$0.68 of debt for every \$1 of equity. Likewise Firm Z's debt-to-assets ratio means that 40.5% of its assets are financed with debt or alternatively, 40.5 cents of every \$1 of assets is financed with debt.

2. Calculation of the capitalization rate for levered Firm Z, with no taxes:

Given:

$$\begin{aligned} r_e \text{ (unlevered)} &= 0.09 \text{ or } 9\% \\ r_d \text{ (risk free debt)} &= 0.05 \text{ or } 5\% \\ t_c &= 0\% \text{ (no corporate taxes)} \end{aligned}$$

Solve: cost of equity ( $r_e$ ) for levered firms:

Firm Z:

$$\begin{aligned}
 r_e &= 0.09 + \left[ (0.09 - 0.05) \left( \frac{\$34,000}{\$50,000} \right) \right] \\
 &= 0.09 + [0.04(0.68)] \\
 &= 0.09 + 0.0272 \\
 &= 0.117 \text{ or } 11.7\%
 \end{aligned}$$

3. Corporate taxes ( $t_c = 25\%$ )

	Alternative 1	Alternative 2	Alternative 3
Earnings before interest	\$200,000	\$200,000	\$200,000
Interest	0	50,000	100,000
Earnings after interest	\$200,000	\$150,000	\$100,000
Tax (25%)	50,000	37,500	25,000
Earnings after taxes	\$150,000	\$112,500	\$75,000
Number of shares	<u>±1,000,000</u>	<u>±500,000</u>	<u>±10,000</u>
Earnings per share	\$0.15	\$0.225	\$7.50
Distribution of earnings:			
Earnings to shareholders	\$150,000	\$112,500	\$75,000
Earnings to bondholders	0	50,000	100,000
Earnings to government	<u>+50,000</u>	<u>+37,500</u>	<u>+25,000</u>
Total earnings	\$200,000	\$200,000	\$200,000

4. Calculation of the present value of interest tax shields for different marginal corporate tax rates:

Given:

$$D = \$100,000$$

$$r_d = 0.12 \text{ or } 12\%$$

Solve: PVITS (present value of interest tax shield) for various tax rates on corporate income

$$\text{PVITS} = t_c D = 0.12(\$100,000) = \$12,000$$

# Management of Cash and Marketable Securities

## **FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

### **Answers**

1. operating, generate, assets, risk, current, working; benefits; current, circulating
2. operating; current; manufacture, sell, collect; net, credit; longer, larger
3. out, purchases; into, pay, purchase; cash, cashlike; management, inflows, outflows, cash
4. uncertainty; precautionary, needs, balance; precaution, degree, predict
5. sell, borrow; transaction; transaction, commissions, selling, borrowing, inventory
6. incoming, lockbox, banks, checks, electronic, concentration; clearinghouse; reduce, Federal Reserve; correspondent
7. slowing; controlled, minimizing, immediate, remote, owed, not, increasing, float

8. immediately; certificates, commercial, Eurodollar, Treasury; safety, risks, default, purchasing, interest, reinvestment, liquidity

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. Firms invest in both short-term and long-term assets for the same reason: to maximize owners' wealth. For short-term or current assets, cash flow consideration is a high priority. For long-term assets, both cash flows and the time value of money are priorities. The investment in short-term assets is influenced by many factors. They are:
  - Business type
  - Product being created
  - Operating cycle
  - Industry practices
  - Customs
  - Traditions
  - Uncertainty inherent in the business
2. Cash forecasting is exploring the need for cash by investigating short-term estimates, in particular, the method for generating the cash, the quantity needed, and the time frame for getting the cash. In order to fully understand the process, knowledge of the operating cycle and net operating cycle are important. The operating cycle is the time it takes to make cash out of cash. The net operating cycle is the time it takes to make cash from cash plus the time payments are delayed on purchases necessary for production. The net operating cycle is a gauge for the cash to be generated. If the net operating cycle is short, then less cash on hand is needed as cash is generated fairly quickly. The opposite is true for longer net operating cycles.
3. Firms hold cash in order to meet the daily transactions from operations. Each firm must decide how much cash should be held on hand and how it should be administered.
4. The amount of cash balances held depends on the types and sizes of the transactions. Transactions for a grocery store are different from an auto manufacturer. The cash amount also depends on the firm's

operating cycle. During slow times, more cash is needed than during peak periods of production.

Uninvested cash is not earning interest. This is called a holding cost and it is an opportunity cost because the cash could be earning money elsewhere.

5. A lockbox system is a system in which customers can send payments directly to a post office box controlled by the firm's bank, bypassing the firm's processing department. The lockbox system reduces mail float and processing float.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. a. The average cash balance of the firm, assuming it lets the cash balance drop to zero before cash infusion, is \$200,000 ( $\$400,000/2$ ). The holding cost is the lost revenue from investing this cash in short-term securities at 7%. Therefore, the holding cost is:

$$\text{Holding cost} = 0.07(\$200,000) = \$14,000$$

- b. The firm needs \$1 million each month, so it uses \$12 million in a year. The transaction cost is the cost per transaction  $\times$  the number of transactions in a year. If the firm needs \$12 million in a year's time, and each cash infusion is for \$400,000, the number of transactions is  $30(\$12,000,000/\$400,000)$ . Therefore the transactions costs are:

$$\text{Transactions cost} = \$100 \times 30 = \$3,000$$

- c. The cost per transaction is \$100, the total demand for cash is \$12 million, and the opportunity cost for holding the cash is 7%.

$$Q^* = \sqrt{\frac{2(\$100)(\$12,000,000)}{0.07}} = \$187,164.02$$

Therefore a cash infusion of \$185,164 would minimize the costs associated with cash.

2.

- a. The return point is the point at which a new cash infusion should be made. The opportunity cost per day is  $0.07/365 = 0.00019$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Return point} &= \text{Lower limit} \\ &+ \sqrt[3]{\frac{0.75(\text{Cost per transaction})(\text{Variance of daily cash flows})}{\text{Opportunity cost per day}}} \\ &= \left( \$500,000 + \sqrt[3]{\frac{0.75(\$100)(\$75,000)}{0.00019}} \right) \\ &= \$503,093.54 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, P&R will need a new cash infusion at \$503, 094.

- b. If cash balances exceed the upper limit, the difference between the cash balance and the return point should be invested in marketable securities. Using the Miller-Orr model to calculate the upper limit:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Upper limit} &= \text{Lower limit} + 3 \\ &\times \sqrt[3]{\frac{0.75(\text{Cost per transaction})(\text{Variance of daily cash flows})}{\text{Opportunity cost per day}}} \\ &= \left( \$500,000 + 3 \times \sqrt[3]{\frac{0.75(\$100)(\$75,000)}{0.00019}} \right) \\ &= \$509,280.63 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore P&R will invest in marketable securities when there is cash in excess of \$509,281.

3. The lockbox system will free  $\$250,000/\text{day} \times 3 \text{ days} = \$750,000$  that the firm may invest at 10%. The benefit from this is an additional amount of income of  $0.10 \times \$750,000 = \$75,000$ . The wire transfers will cost the firm \$9,000. This is netted with the processing cost savings, so the additional cost is  $\$9,000 - \$5,000 = \$4,000$ . The net benefit to the firm is  $\$75,000 - \$4,000 = \$71,000$ . Because this is greater than the cost of the lockbox (\$35,000), the system is worthwhile.
4. The order quantity that will minimize total costs for Jewelz is the economic order quantity:

$$\begin{aligned} Q^* &= \sqrt{\frac{2(\text{Cost per transaction})(\text{Total demand})}{\text{Carrying cost per unit}}} \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{2(\$190)(400,000)}{\$7}} \\ &= 4,659.86 = 4,660 \text{ stones} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore Jewelz is not ordering the optimal amount to minimize its total cost.



# Management of Receivables and Inventory

## **FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

### **Answers**

1. current, receivable, inventory, operation; inventory, goods, type, nature
2. credit, sales; credit, financial, marketing; sales, services; benefit, profit
3. carrying, holding, opportunity, investment; opportunity, return, opportunity; invested, sales
4. credit, interest; Annualizing, comparable
5. Credit, maximum, payment, discount, discount; discounts, customers, sales, payment, receivable
6. Collection, delinquent; reminders, severe, collection; aggressive, lost
7. Monitoring, receivable, ratios, aging; ratios, receivable; Aging, long, collection
8. credit, benefits, credit, cost; maximizes; uncertain; forecasting, experience

9. Subsidiary, owned, credit, collection; captive, finance, products; sales, loans
10. Inventory; Inventory, sale; factors; investing, insufficient; inventory, little
11. Monitoring, ratios; inventory, inventory; days; sales; demand, production, purchasing; inventory

## **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

### **Answers**

1. The extension of credit means that customers are allowed to pay for goods and services at a later date after purchase. This type of action creates accounts receivable as the provider of the goods or service is waiting to receive payment. This is also called trade credit which is an informal credit arrangement created in order to increase sales.
2. If a customer pays in full on the purchase date or within the discount period, the customer gets a discount from the invoice price. If the invoice is paid after the discount period, the customer must pay full price. In a sense, this is borrowing because the customer is borrowing the discounted price amount for the price of the discount. For example, if trade credit terms read 5/15, net 30, this means 5% reduction off the invoice if it is paid within 15 days of the purchase, thereafter, the full price is due by the 30th day after purchase. In a sense, if the invoice is \$100, then the customer is borrowing \$95 for \$5. Costs related to granting credit are the cost of the discount, carrying costs (of accounts receivable), administration and collection costs, and risk of default by customers.
3. The following factors must be considered when extending credit:
  - The price elasticity of your goods and services
  - The probability of bad debts
  - Timing of customer's payments
4. The factors that influence the creditworthiness of a firm are capacity, character, collateral, and conditions. Prior experience with customers,

previously assigned credit ratings, consumer reports, and financial condition all underlie these factors. In order for a firm to be deemed credit-worthy, they must have high ratings and evidence of the four Cs.

5. Reasons to hold inventory:

- Need inventory to meet sales
- Need for staggering stages of produced goods
- Hold on to speculative inventory
- To satisfy contractual arrangements

6. The Economic Order Quantity (EOQ) model determines the quantity of inventory to order to minimize total inventory costs (carrying costs + ordering costs). The Economic Order Quantity model makes the following assumptions: (1) Inventory is received instantaneously; (2) inventory is steadily used; and (3) inventory shortages must be avoided.

The Just-in-Time Inventory (JIT) model is used to cut down on inventory costs by reducing inventory on hand and by coordinating the supply of raw materials with the production and marketing of the goods. The purpose of JIT is to carry no inventory or as little as possible without interfering with production and sales.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

- 1.
- a. If Retton's customers do not take the discount pay on the 60th day, they are, in effect, borrowing the money for  $60 - 20 = 40$  days. The discount:  $r = 2/98 = 2.041\%$  and there are  $365/40 = 9.125$  periods in a year. Therefore, the effective annual rate is:

$$\text{EAR} = (1.02041)^{9.125} - 1 = 20.25\%$$

If Retton makes the proposed change, the customers will now be paying \$3 to borrow \$97 for 45 days if they do not take the discount and pay on the 60th day. This makes the discount rate  $r = 4/96 = 4.167\%$  and there are  $365/45 = 8.11$  periods in a year, so the effective annual rate is  $\text{EAR} = (1.03093)^{8.11} - 1 = 39.25\%$ .

- b. The cost to Retton of any discount is equal to the discount percentage times the credit sales using the discount (Retton has not changed its contribution margin).

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Credit sales using discount} &= \text{Sales} \times (\% \text{ using discount}) \\ &= \$500,000 \times 0.6 = \$300,000\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Cost of discount} = \$300,000 \times (0.02) = \$6,000$$

$$\text{Credit sales using discount} = \$800,000 \times (0.75) = \$600,000$$

$$\text{Cost of discount} = \$600,000 \times (0.04) = \$24,000$$

The net cost to Retton of the change in the discount is therefore:

$$\$24,000 - \$6,000 = \$18,000.$$

- c. The carrying cost of the receivables is the opportunity cost of Retton's investment in the accounts receivable. Retton's investment is the variable cost of its accounts receivable.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Accounts receivable} &= \text{ACP} \times \text{Average daily sales} \\ &= 40 \times \$500,000/365 = \$54,795\end{aligned}$$

If the contribution margin is 25%, Retton's variable cost ratio is 75%, so its investment in accounts receivable is  $0.75 \times \$54,795 = \$41,096$ . So the cost of carrying the receivables is  $0.12 \times \$41,096 = \$4,932$ .

Under the proposed credit terms, Retton's accounts receivables will be equal to  $30 \times 800,000/365 = \$65,753$ . Its investment in the accounts receivable is  $0.75 \times 65,753 = \$49,315$ . So the cost of carrying the receivables is  $0.12 \times \$49,315 = \$5,918$ . The change in the cost is therefore  $\$5,918 - \$4,932 = \$986$ .

- d. A cost benefit analysis must be done. One benefit is the increased profit due to the increased sales:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Benefit from extending credit} &= (\text{Contribution margin}) \times (\text{Change in sales}) \\ &= 0.25(\$300,000) = \$75,000\end{aligned}$$

A cost is the increase in carrying costs of \$986. So the firm enjoys the net benefits of  $\$75,000 - \$986 = \$74,014$ . The new credit terms will cost the firm an additional \$18,000 in discounts but because the benefits outweigh the costs, Retton should make the change.

# Management of Short-Term Financing

## **FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

### **Answers**

1. cash, receivable, securities; working, profit; Working, permanent, continual, operations, temporary, difference
2. effective, financing, direct, indirect; funds, compounding
3. Trade, goods, services; Trade, future; seller's, sales; customer's, purchase; seller, receivables, customer, payable
4. payable, purchases; payable, receivable; minimize, credit, sales
5. uniform; customer, better; cost, discount, delayed; beyond, lowers
6. Secured, asset; assets, collateral; collateral, funds; current, marketable, receivable, inventory
7. receivable, secured; receivable, assignment, factoring, securitizing; securitization, short-, intermediate-
8. receivables, receivable, collateral; cash, promissory; amount
9. receivable, collateral, sell, factor; receivables; credit, credit, collecting

10. repurchase, repo; price, date; collateralized, security; repo; overnight, term

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. The costs of borrowing are interest rates and fees. The different types of interest rates and fees are:
  - Annual percentage rate is the annualized cost of financing without compounding interest.
  - Effective annual rate is the annualized cost of financing with compounding interest.
  - A single payment loan is a loan in which everything—principal and interest—is paid at the end of the term.
  - A discount loan is a loan for only a portion of the total amount needed by the borrower because the interest is paid in the beginning prior to disbursing the loan.
  - Add-on-interest is the traditional idea of a loan in which a portion of the principal and interest is paid each period and interest is compounded.
  - Compensating balance is when a specific balance is required at all times.
  - A loan origination fee is a fee charged by the lender to perform credit checks and for legal fees in order to process the loan.
  - A commitment fee is a fee charged by the lender for the opportunity to use readily available loanable funds.
2. Secured and unsecured financing indicates the existence of collateral in order to guarantee repayment. Often creditworthy customers may be allowed unsecured financing if the lender is satisfied with the customer's ability to pay. If a customer is not creditworthy, then the lender will ask for collateral prior to granting a secured loan.
3. The longer the credit period, the lower the cost of trade credit. This is almost counter-intuitive. However, if one contemplates that the customer/borrower maintains the money that is due to the lender, then the effective annual cost is lowered. The shorter the time the customer/borrower has the money, the higher the effective annual cost

because the customer is, in a sense, not spreading the costs out over a longer period of time.

4. There is no doubt that waiting to pay reduces the cost of trade credit (see the answer to short answer question 3), however if the customer waits too long, then costly penalties can be charged. These penalties range from paying insurance, license fees, late fees, taxes, and bad credit fees.
5. A high turnover is good news if the borrower is reimbursing the sellers in a timely fashion. This establishes goodwill and the sellers will appreciate the prompt payment. High turnover can be bad news if discounts are overlooked as bills are being paid prior to their due date. In this case, the borrower is overpaying the seller twofold—once by paying in a timely manner, and again by paying the discount as a premium. It is as if the borrower is paying for the privilege to pay early.

Low turnover may be good news, as payments are not made too quickly. Granted, discounts cannot be taken advantage of, but the lower effective cost of trade is a benefit. Low turnover can be bad news if payments aren't made in a timely enough fashion and the penalties listed in the answer to short answer question 4 are invoked.

6. The types of financing arrangements:

A single payment loan:

- is the simplest short-term financing arrangement.
- utilizes interest rates that are fixed or floating.

A line of credit:

- is flexible because a bank makes the funds available.
- has a fixed interest rate.
- charges a firm a cost regardless of use.
- has covenants.

A revolving credit agreement:

- is similar to a line of credit.
- is for two to three years.
- allows the borrower to use the credit repeatedly.
- charges a commitment fee, or compensating balance, and interest.
- has a floating interest rate.

A letter of credit:

- can be either cancelable or committed by the bank.
- charges the borrower a commitment fee and interest.
- has a fixed interest rate.

There are other loan mechanisms that are sold in the financial markets. They are commercial paper and bankers' acceptances.

Commercial paper:

- comes in large denominations.
- is unsecured.
- is backed by a line of credit from a bank.
- has interest rates that vary.

Bankers' acceptances:

- commit a bank to make payment at maturity if the issuer defaults.
- are used in international trade.
- have maturities of less than 270 days.
- cost a commitment fee and a commission of the interest rate if the issuer defaults.
- have a discount interest rate.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. The effective annual rate of each alternative must be determined.
  - a. The interest charged by Bank A is  $16\%/4 = 4\%$ , so  $0.04 \times \$100,000 = \$4,000$ . The compensating balance is  $0.17 \times \$100,000 = \$17,000$ . Deducting the compensating balance and the loan origination fee from the face value of the loan leaves CZ with  $\$100,000 - \$17,000 - \$1,000 = \$82,000$  of usable funds. The three-month interest rate is then  $(\$4,000 + \$1,000)/\$82,000 = 6.10\%$ . There are three four-month periods in one year so  $EAR = (1.061)^3 = 19.44\%$ .

- b. The interest charged by Bank B is  $20\%/3 = 6.67\%$ , so  $0.0667 \times \$100,000 = \$6,670$ . The compensating balance is  $0.10 \times 100,000 = \$10,000$ . Because the loan is a discount loan, the interest is deducted at the beginning of the loan. Deducting the interest and the compensating balance from the face value of the loan leaves CZ with  $\$100,000 - \$10,000 - \$6,670 = \$83,330$  of usable funds. The three-month interest rate is  $\$6,670/\$83,330 = 8.00\%$ . There are four three-month periods in one year so  $EAR = (1.08)^4 = 36.05\%$ .
- c. The interest charged by Bank C is  $24\%/12 = 2\%$ , so  $0.02 \times 100,000 = \$2,000$ . Because there is no loan origination fee and no compensating balance requirement, CZ has full use of  $\$100,000$ . The one-month interest rate is  $\$2,000/\$100,000 = 2\%$ . There are 12 months in one year so the EAR is  $(1.02)^{12} - 1 = 26.82\%$ .
- d. If CZ uses the trade credit, it will forgo  $\$3$  in order to borrow  $\$97$  for 35 days. The 35-day interest charge is  $\$3/\$97 = 3.09\%$ . There are 10.4 35-day periods in one year, the EAR is  $(1.0309)^{10.4} - 1 = 37.23\%$ .

The order of cheapest source to most expensive is: Bank A, Bank C, Bank B, Trade Credit.

2. Safe-T paid  $\$9,700,000 - \$9,500,000 = \$200,000$  to use  $\$9,500,000$  for 30 days. The 30-day interest rate is  $\$200,000/\$9,500,000 = 2.11\%$ . There are 12.2 30-day periods in one year so the effective annual cost is  $(1.0211)^{12.2} - 1 = 29.01\%$ .
3. The interest on the loan is  $0.11 \times \$1,000,000 = \$110,000$ . The warehouse fee is  $0.035 \times \$1,000,000 = \$35,000$ . Deducting the fee from the proceeds of the loan, Rustee will have  $\$1,000,000 - \$35,000 = \$965,000$  in usable funds. The effective annual cost is  $(\$110,000 + 35,000)/\$965,000 = 15.03\%$ .
4. The five-month interest rate is  $(\$250,000 - \$237,500)/\$237,500 = 5.26\%$ . There are 2.4 five-month periods in a year so the EAR is  $(1.0526)^{2.4} - 1 = 13.09\%$ .
5. We're #1 charges 40 basis points above prime or 4.4% APR. This is a monthly rate of  $4.4/12 = 0.37\%$ . There are no other fees so the effective annual rate is  $(1.0037)^{12} - 1 = 4.5\%$ .

We're #2 charges 30 basis points above the prime rate or 4.3% APR. This is a monthly rate of  $4.3/12 = 0.36\%$ . The interest fee for

the month is then  $0.0036 \times 640,000 = \$2,304$ . They also charge a fee up front of  $0.02 \times \$800,000 = \$16,000$ . Chips will save \$4,000 in credit processing costs, however if we assume that these are saved up front, we can net these savings with the fee charged and get  $\$16,000 - \$4,000 = \$12,000$ . Chips will have usable proceeds from the loan of  $\$640,000 - \$12,000 = \$628,000$ . The effective monthly cost of the loan is  $(\$2,304 + \$12,000)/\$628,000 = 2.28\%$ . The EAR =  $(1.0228)^{12} - 1 = 31.07\%$ .

We're #1's terms are least costly for Bags-O-Chips.

# Financial Ratio Analysis

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

### Answers

1. ratio, ratio, comparison; constructed, characteristic; combinations, statements
2. investment, benefits, investment; assets, power, operating; equity, income, equity
3. return, profit, turnover, Du Pont; components, why, performance
4. Liquidity, short, cash; cash, liquid, current; Current, working, day-to-day
5. operating; operating, cash, services, cash; longer, operating, greater, working
6. profit, income, sales; income, dollar; gross, production; gross, sales
7. Activity, assets, inventory, receivable; inventory, goods, services; receivable, credit; total asset, value, sales
8. risk, debt, debt, equity; leverage, risk; leverage, component, coverage
9. Interest, interest-covered, burdens; interest, debt; greater, better, interest

10. Common-size, statement; common-size, balance, income; calculate, benchmark; balance, assets; income, sales

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. The most basic way of presenting financial information is in ratio format. Ratio analysis can be used to analyze the overall picture of a firm and compare across firms. Ratios are classified according to the characteristic they are measuring:

- A coverage ratio measures “coverage” of financial obligations.
- A return ratio measures net benefit from an investment.
- A turnover ratio measures the functionality of a firm’s assets.
- A component percentage is the ratio comparing one amount in a financial statement to the total of the amounts.

2. Five aspects of operating performance that should be analyzed for overall viability of the firm are:

- Return on investment
- Liquidity
- Profitability
- Activity
- Financial leverage

It is important to know whether or not the firm is functioning to its best capacity and if assets are being used properly in order to obtain the goal of maximizing shareholder wealth.

3. The Du Pont system measures the source of performance. It does so by decomposing return ratios into components that identify which area is responsible for the performance.
4. Book value is an accounting measure and involves past values. It does not capture the dynamic value as seen by the market and what an investor is likely to pay. Because the two measures are different by nature, book value and market value are not highly correlated.

5. Financial ratio analysis tells a partial story based on book values. It does not necessarily tell the entire story. There are many limitations of ratio analysis and this needs to be considered when attempting to analyze a firm. Other concerns arise with the methods and data used in forecasting and in the selection of the correct benchmark. Keep in mind that accounting data can be unreliable and can only tell so much.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. Recall, data from financials are assumed to be  $\times \$100,000$ . Overall, we can see that Wang is struggling to recover after bankruptcy.

a. Current ratio =  $\frac{\$425,000}{\$381,000} = 1.12$  times

b. Quick ratio =  $\frac{\$401,000}{\$381,000} = 1.05$  times

c. Inventory turnover =  $\frac{\$656,000}{\$24,000} = 27.33$  times

d. Total asset turnover =  $\frac{\$946,000}{\$859,000} = 1.10$  times

e. Gross profit margin =  $\frac{\$946,000 - 656,000}{\$946,000} = 30.7\%$

f. Operating profit margin =  $\frac{-\$63,000}{\$946,000} = -6.66\%$

g. Net profit margin =  $\frac{-\$58,000}{\$946,000} = -6.13\%$

$$\text{h. Debt-to-assets ratio} = \frac{\$494,000}{\$859,000} = 57.61\%$$

$$\text{i. Debt-to-equity ratio} = \frac{\$494,000}{\$366,000} = 135\%$$

$$\text{j. Return on assets (basic earning power)} = \frac{-\$63,000}{\$859,000} = -7.33\%$$

$$\text{k. Return on equity} = \frac{-\$58,000}{\$366,000} = -15.8\%$$

$$\text{l. Average day's cost of goods sold} = \frac{\$656,000}{365 \text{ days}} = \$1,797 \text{ per day}$$

$$\text{Number of days of inventory} = \frac{\$24,000}{\$1,797 \text{ per day}} = 13.36 \text{ days}$$

m. Assuming all sales on credit:

$$\text{Credit sales per day} = \frac{\$946,000}{365 \text{ days}} = \$2,592 \text{ per day}$$

$$\text{Number of days credit} = \frac{\$182,000}{\$2,592} = 70.22 \text{ days}$$

n. Assuming all purchases on credit:

$$\text{Average days purchases} = \frac{\$656,000 - 134,000}{365 \text{ days}} = \$1,430 \text{ per day}$$

$$\text{Number of days of purchases} = \frac{\$381,000}{\$1,430} = 266.43 \text{ days}$$

$$\text{o. Operating cycle} = 13.36 \text{ days} + 70.22 \text{ days} = 83.58 \text{ days}$$

p. Net operating cycle =  $83.58 - 266.43$  days =  $-182.85$  days

2. The industry ratios:

Current ratio	2 times
Quick ratio	1 times
Number of days of credit	90 days
Inventory turnover	35 times
Total asset turnover	3 times
Debt-to-equity ratio	45%
Operating profit margin	10%
Net profit margin	7%
Return on assets	9%
Return on equity	11%

Wang's ratios:

Current ratio	1.12 times
Quick ratio	1.05 times
Number of days of credit	30 days
Inventory turnover	27.33 times
Total asset turnover	1.10 times
Debt-to-equity ratio	135.0%
Operating profit margin	-6.66%
Net profit margin	-6.13%
Return on assets	-7.33%
Return on equity	-15.8%

All in all, Wang is still struggling to emerge from bankruptcy. The current ratio and the quick ratios do show that Wang can cover current obligations. However, that is about all they can do until they can regain their financial footing. They do have fewer number of days of credit, which implies that they want to receive customer payments sooner, and while extending credit does increase sales, Wang might be able to lengthen the number of days after it gets in better shape. Currently, the cash flow from accounts receivable is in demand by the company. Wang is carrying entirely too much debt and turnover is too slow relative to the industry. They have negative profit margins and returns indicating they are losing money. Management needs to take a hard look at what it can do to improve the firms financial health or else it may want to consider filing for Chapter 22 (Chapter 11 for the second time).



**Earnings Analysis****FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

**Answers**

1. prices; future, forecasted, stock; stock, over, under
2. Forecasting; historical, current, earnings, dividends; value
3. operations, operating, EBIT; overall, net income, less; common shareholder's, preferred
4. amount, dollar; income, share, market; EPS, common, outstanding
5. Basic; Diluted, dilutive; earnings, restate
6. future, cash, prices; publicly, analysts; providers, forecasts
7. consensus, average; surprise, actual, forecasted, forecasted
8. Consensus, individual, explaining, momentum, torpedo; growth, current, next
9. future, previous, autoregressive; time, historical, adjusted; statistical, previously
10. earnings; price-earnings, P/E; price, earnings; stock, earnings; inverse, yield, E/P

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. The market price of a share of stock is dictated by the price paid for it. The price is the reflection of investors' beliefs concerning the future stream of cash flows.
2. Earnings management is when financial information is manipulated (through accounting methods, inventory methods, depreciation methods, and timing) so the financials look better than they actually are. In other words, earnings management attempts to paint a rosier picture of a firm that may have something to hide or else just wants to outshine its competitors. The financial analyst must be very familiar with the business practices and their methods in order to provide accurate information to investors.
3. The relationship between earnings and stock price is as follows:
  - Stock prices rise or fall in response to an announcement of unexpected good or poor earnings.
  - Accounting earnings are correlated more with long-term stock returns than short-term stock returns.

The source of this relationship is unclear. Some believe that the strong relationship is because earnings are not managed and others believe reported earnings drive stock price.

4. Earnings per share is influenced by the changing number of common shares outstanding. Changes in shares outstanding occur because of:
  - **Timing:** Since the number of shares outstanding changes constantly, this movement is highly dynamic compared to the net income that is earned over the same time. So for any given company, it may show a variety of EPS measures throughout the year because the number of shares is constantly in flux, however the EPS measures are calculated at specified intervals.
  - **Dilutive securities:** The existence of convertible securities such as convertible preferred stock, employee stock options, convertible bonds, and warrants are exercised at different times thus changing the number of shares that influence the denominator of the EPS ratio.

The changing number of common shares outstanding is the cause for the multiple forms of EPS:

- Basic earnings per share (BPS) are earnings minus preferred dividends, divided by the average number of shares outstanding.
  - Diluted earnings per share (DPS) are earnings minus preferred dividends, divided by the number of shares outstanding considering all dilutive securities.
5. The accuracy of EPS forecasts depends completely upon the validity of the data, the quantity of data (meaning the number of years' worth of data) and the type of statistical method. Often the data used in forecasting EPS are historical EPS of the company, however, the EPS measures must be recalculated based on the adjustments in accounting policy. Forecasting based on trends of EPS can be precarious and is model dependent, and the results should be interpreted with extreme caution. There is conflicting literature concerning the value of financial analysts' forecasts. Some hold that analyst forecasts are not any better than the currently used statistical models and others say they are better because analysts can process the current information and apply human reasoning. The point is that the accuracy of the forecast is only as good as the data, the model, and the modeler, which leaves much room for doubt and mistakes. Don't kill the analysts, they are only human.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. Finding the earnings per share (EPS) for the end of the year:

$$\text{Earnings per share} = \frac{\text{Earnings available to common stockholders}}{\text{Number of common shares outstanding}}$$

$$\text{EPS} = \frac{\$6.5 \text{ million}}{1.87 \text{ million}} = \$3.48 \text{ per share}$$

This is a rough measure as it does not consider time. If time is considered, then the estimate for EPS changes.

Q1 = 1.5 million shares outstanding, Q2 = Q3 = Q4 = 1.87 million shares, then

$$\begin{aligned} \text{EPS} &= \frac{\$6.5 \text{ million}}{0.25(1.5 \text{ million shares}) + 0.75(1.87 \text{ million})} \\ &= \frac{\$6.5 \text{ million}}{1,777,500 \text{ shares outstanding}} \\ &= \$3.67 \text{ per share} \end{aligned}$$

2. a. Dividend Payout Ratio

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{\text{Dividends}}{\text{Earnings available to common shareholders}} \\ &= \frac{\$0.30}{\$1.80} = 16.7\% \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{b. P/E ratio} = \frac{\text{Market price per share}}{\text{Earnings per share}} = \frac{\$28.50}{\$1.80} = 15.83$$

c. Investors base their purchase decisions on expected future earnings, not on past earnings. The P/E ratio indicates how much investors are willing to pay for each dollar of current earnings per share. It does not take future earnings into account, but investors do. It can be shown that sometimes investors are too optimistic and have paid for overvalued stock.

3.

$$\text{BPS} = \frac{\text{Earnings available to common shareholders} - \text{Preferred dividends}}{\text{Number of shares outstanding}}$$

$$\text{DPS} = \frac{\text{Earnings available to common shareholders} - \text{Preferred dividends}}{\text{Number of shares outstanding including all dilutive securities}}$$

Because there is no specific method of timing, weighted measures are not used.

$$\text{BPS} = \frac{\$4,355 \text{ million}}{1,300 \text{ million shares outstanding}} = \$3.35 \text{ per share}$$

DPS

$$= \frac{\$4,355 \text{ million}}{1,300 \text{ million shares outstanding} + 300 \text{ million potentially dilutive shares}}$$

= \$2.72 per share

4. a. Forecast error =  $\frac{\text{Actual EPS} - \text{Consensus EPS}}{\text{Actual EPS}}$

$$= \frac{\$1.82 - \$1.95}{\$1.82} = -7.14\%$$

b. The forecast error is  $-7.14\%$ , meaning that the actual was  $7.14\%$  lower than the forecasted. The market will react negatively to the worse-than-expected earnings and the stock price should decrease accordingly.



**Cash Flow Analysis****FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

**Answers**

1. Cash, valuation, value, future; past, current, dividends, expenditure, financing
2. measuring, into, out; cash, size, demands, working
3. nondiscretionary, discretionary; statement, flexibility, decisions, health
4. no, calculating; measure, methods, calculate
5. net free, NCF; earnings, less; expenditures, maintenance, expansion, working
6. Net, unconstrained; creditor's, ability, debt; shareholder's, reinvested
7. capital expenditures, capital expenditures; flexibility, capital; larger, greater
8. debt, debt, debt; ability, debt, credit
9. information, condition; Healthy, unhealthy, operations, declining; unhealthy, more

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. There is no uniform definition of cash flow, so it must always be discussed in context. Cash flow can be the total amount of cash flowing into and out of the company during a period. It can be the net of those cash flows. Some ways to measure cash flow are:
  - Add noncash expenses to net income
  - Calculate earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation, and amortization
  - Use the statement of cash flows
2. The direct method of reporting cash flow is reporting all cash inflows and outflows. The indirect method begins with net income and makes adjustments for depreciation, noncash expenses, and changes in working capital. Of the two, the direct method is the most computationally expensive.
3. Examining the cash flows from operations, investments, and financing activities, an analyst can gauge the activities of the firm. Please refer to Exhibit 24.1 on page 802 of *Financial Management and Analysis* for more detail.
4. Michael Jensen developed the theory of free cash flow which is the cash flow left over after the company funds all positive NPV projects. In other words, free cash flow is the cash flow of the firm, less capital expenditures necessary to stay in business and grow at the expected rate. Free cash flow reveals how firms actually get rid of their excess cash. This can be done through dividend payments to shareholders, retirement of debt, repurchase of stock, and the like. If free cash flow is not purged, the firm holding the free cash flow could become a takeover target by a firm that needs free cash flow.
5. An analysis of cash flows can reveal a more accurate picture of a firm's health and operations. The analysis reveals:
  - The sources of financing for the company's capital spending
  - The company's dependence on borrowing
  - The quality of earnings

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. Although there are several variations on how to calculate the various free cash flows, the method that is applied to this problem can be found on page 808 of *Financial Management and Analysis*. The purpose of choosing this method is to keep the calculations simple.

Free Cash Flows	In Millions
EBIT	\$21
Depreciation and amortization	\$4
Capital expenditures	(\$15)
Free cash flow	\$10
Interest	(\$2)
Taxes	(\$7)
Net free cash flow	\$1
Cash dividends	(\$2)
Net cash flow	(\$1)



# International Financial Management

## **FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

### **Answers**

1. domestic; financing, investment, international, domestic; financial, global
2. protectionism; Agreement, Tariffs, barriers; International Monetary, IMF; European, economic; American, Trade, NAFTA, goods
3. multinational, countries; multinational, borders; domestic, markets, production, resources, hurdles, technology
4. currencies; exchange, currency; exchange, currency, value; exchange-rate, adversely
5. loses, depreciated, devalued; gains, appreciated, revalued
6. no, price, same; one, currencies, price; purchasing power, PPP
7. Income, indirect, central, corporate; sales, business
8. subsidiaries; intercompany, transfer; congruence, multinational; taxes, income, import

9. Globalization, integration; internal, national, external; domestic, foreign; domestic, domiciled, traded
10. segmented, integrated; segmented, not; integrated, no; neither, mildly, mildly
11. bond, foreign, Euromarket; underwritten, simultaneously, outside, unregistered; Eurobond
12. cost, international, domestic, international; foreign, repatriation, political; restrictions, capital

## **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

### **Answers**

1. As the global community gets smaller and more easily accessible, firms should participate in the international market for the sake of survival, competition, and increasing profits. Because everything today is more global, a firm in isolation will have trouble competing. If firms cannot compete, they do not survive. The goal of the firm is to maximize shareholder wealth and with the advent of computers and advanced telecommunications, this can be done through worldwide expansion in friendly markets.
2. Free trade is the ability of countries to trade with one another without being constrained. Free trade promotes specialization which makes production more efficient and increases output. This in turn increases competition which translates into product variety and lower prices for the consumer. Free trade benefits countries that have a comparative or competitive advantage, however it hurts those that don't.
3. Corporate income tax is based on a percentage of income earned. The rate can vary within the country, such as in the United States where there are tax brackets, and it can vary between countries. If a company has foreign branches and/or subsidiaries, it is customary for resident corporations to be taxed by the main country on the entire worldwide income. Some countries repatriate taxes, meaning they return some of the taxes back to the country in which the subsidiary resides. If a company is a nonresident corporation, then that company

only pays taxes on the income earned within the country. Some countries have tax treaties that allow for negotiation of tax treatments.

4. There is no set global definition of taxable income, therefore it varies from country to country. Nonresident corporations and expatriates often must obtain an accountant in the foreign country and one in their home country in order to fully determine taxable income because there are multiple methods in dealing with some of the accounting data. Such items that are treated differently are depreciation, inventory, the deductibility of interest expense, and inflation of expenses.
5. When a corporation issues equity outside of its domestic market and it is traded in the foreign market, it is an international depository receipt (IDR). Banks issue IDRs as proof of ownership and hold them in trust for the owner. A benefit to the IDR is that the issuer is released from foreign regulatory issuing requirements.

The American depository receipt (ADR), is the U.S. version of the IDR. Characteristics of ADRs are:

- They are denominated in U.S. dollars.
- They pay dividends.
- They do not grant the holder voting rights or any rights that give authority in the company.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. A Venezuelan bolivar is worth \$0.000626 U.S.  
An Australian dollar is worth \$0.64 U.S.
  - a. There are  $0.64/\$0.0006 = 1,066.67$  Venezuelan bolivars per Australian dollar
  - b. There are  $\$0.0006/\$0.64 = 0.0009375$  Australian dollars per Venezuelan bolivars
2. Consider, \$10,000 (35,000 ARS):

$$\text{In terms of AR: Return} = \frac{43,750 - 35,000}{35,000} = 25\%$$

$$\text{In terms of US\$: Return} = \frac{\$12,500 - 10,000}{\$10,000} = 25\%$$

$$\text{a. Return} = \frac{\$875 - 10,000}{\$10,000} = -91.25\%$$

$$\text{b. Return} = \frac{\$21,875 - 10,000}{\$10,000} = 1.19\%$$

3. a. Transfer price = \$30

	U.S. Parent Company Alone	Subsidiary
Revenue	\$6,000,000	\$38,000,000
Variable manufacturing costs	\$4,000,000	\$9,000,000
Fixed manufacturing costs	\$3,000,000	\$2,000,000
Taxable income	(\$1,000,000)	\$27,000,000
Income taxes	0	\$12,150,000
Net income after taxes	(\$1,000,000)	\$14,850,000

Worldwide income taxes: \$12,150,000

Worldwide net income after taxes: \$13,150,000

b. Transfer price \$50

	U.S. Parent Company Alone	Subsidiary
Revenue	\$10,000,000	\$38,000,000
Variable manufacturing costs	\$4,000,000	\$13,000,000
Fixed manufacturing costs	\$3,000,000	\$2,000,000
Taxable income	\$3,000,000	\$23,000,000
Income taxes	\$900,000	\$10,350,000
Net income after taxes	\$2,100,000	\$12,650,000

Worldwide income taxes: \$10,350,000

Worldwide net income after taxes: \$14,750,000

# Borrowing via Structured Finance Transactions

## **FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

### **Answers**

1. bond, loans, receivables; collateral, asset; finance, structured
2. structured, asset; bond, asset, funding; all-in-cost, lower
3. credit, asset; rating, ability, equity; loan; determinant, default, sell, loan
4. third, servicer, originator; payments, delinquencies, finance
5. Rating, servicer, servicer, credit; servicer, not, backup
6. structure, flows, payments, obligations; losses, rate; stress, risk, not, credit, credit
7. enhancement, fee, insurance, yield, credit; External, credit; Internal, senior; more, specific
8. easiest, insurance; insurance, guarantee; event; downgraded, downgraded
9. senior, internal, bond; several; yield, yields; lower, more, lower

10. Reserve, cash, spread; Cash; deposited, offset; spread, coupon, fee, expenses

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. Structured finance refers to debt and related securities that are backed by collateral such as loans or receivables or third-party support. To make use of a structured financing, a lender would accumulate loans or receivables and use them as collateral for debt securities the lender would then issue. Therefore, the debt obligation that the lender issues is backed by the proposed incoming cash flows from the loans being paid into the lender or any accounts receivables.
2. The purposes for using structured financing are as follows:
  - Potential for reducing funding costs
  - To diversify funding sources
  - To accelerate earnings for financial reporting purposes
  - For regulated entities, potential relief from capital requirements
  - The tax treatment of sales to special purpose vehicles
3. A captive finance company is usually a subsidiary whose sole purpose is to provide financing to customers who buy the parent company's products. Often the types of companies that utilize captive finance companies are manufacturers, however some retailers also will do this with what sounds like in-store-credit, however the outside credit provider is a captive finance company.
4. Credit rating agencies investigate:
  - The collateral's credit quality
  - The quality of the seller/servicer
  - Cash flow stress and payment structure

Verification of overall credit quality only comes after the rating agencies scrutinize the borrower's ability to service the obligations and the borrower's equity in the asset. Everything about the borrower comes under review from the servicing history to the financial condi-

tion of the borrower. If the borrower receives an acceptable rating, the borrower is free to obtain a structured financing; if not, then either the borrower must seek third-party credit help or give up on the structured financing.



**Equipment Leasing****FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

**Answers**

1. lease, lease, payments; lessor, lessee
2. Equipment, nontax, tax; Nontax, conditional sale, price, renewal; tax, lessor, lessee
3. advantage, leasing, lessees, conserves; borrows, equal; borrowing, equity, payment
4. payment, equipment, creditworthiness, economic; Leasing; delivery, installation; lease
5. standards, capital, liability, balance; operating, not; footnote, financial; capital, operating
6. cancelable, obsolescence; avoidance, cost; disposal, lessor; value, cost
7. covenants, restrictions, loan; true, Internal Revenue, true, loan
8. true, lower, superior; after-tax, superior; true, less, book, depreciation, interest
9. commercial, subsidiaries, leasing, captive, finance, investment, insurance

10. indirectly, working; Captive, subsidiaries, parent; Captives, lease
11. brokers, advisers, equipment; pricing, structuring, negotiating; lessees, lessor; brokerage; complexity, attractiveness, environment
12. synthetic, ownership, investor; off-balance, cost

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. A typical leasing transaction works as follows: The lessee first decides all the particulars on the necessary equipment and the terms of delivery. Negotiations are made on the price and sales contract, including the lease agreement and the specifics. After signing of the lease, the equipment is delivered and paid for. When the term of the lease has concluded, the lessee may renew, buy the equipment outright, or return the equipment.
2. The leveraged form of a true lease of equipment is the ultimate form of lease financing. Its selling point (or leasing point) is the ability of the lessor to benefit from the tax treatment of depreciation while the lessee receives the lease at a lower cost.
3. Leasing is an alternative to purchasing, with benefits. Because it is similar to a debt obligation, the debt payments can be used by the lessee to conserve capital. Leasing is less expensive than purchasing, it preserves credit and avoids the risk of being saddled with obsolete equipment that will need to be disposed of. In general, leases are flexible for a variety of reasons, some of which are:
  - They are less restrictive.
  - They can be customized.
  - Financing is easily obtained.
  - Disclosure is unnecessary.
  - There is no maintenance.
  - There is less impact on cash flow.
4. There are two types of leases: operating leases and capital leases. Characteristics of operating leases are that there is no complete

transfer of ownership—the leased property is not capitalized, the lease is not reported on the balance sheet, lease payments are expensed, and they must be disclosed in the financial statements. A capital lease is leasing an asset but treating it as if it is purchased and financed over a designated period. Unlike operating leases, capital leases must be reported as a liability on the balance sheet. Further, there is a transfer of ownership and the lessee is allowed to receive the tax benefits of depreciation.

## PROBLEMS

### Answers

1. a. Depreciation amounts:

Year	Depreciation
1	\$49,995
2	66,675
3	22,215
4	11,115

- b. Cost of the machine: \$150,000

Tax credit: 0

Estimated pretax residual: \$5,000 value after disposal costs

Economic life of the machine: 5 years

	End of Year				
	0	1	2	3	4
Cost of machine	150,000				
Lost tax credit	0	0	0	0	0
Lease payment	(35,000)	(35,000)	(35,000)	(35,000)	
Tax shield form lease payment <sup>a</sup>	10,500	10,500	10,500	10,500	
Lost depreciation tax shields <sup>b</sup>		(14,999)	(20,003)	(6,665)	(3,335)
Lost residual value					(3,500)
Total	125,500	(39,499)	(44,503)	(31,165)	(6,835)

<sup>a</sup> Lease payment multiplied by the marginal tax rate.

<sup>b</sup> Depreciation for year multiplied by marginal tax rate.

c. Adjusted discount rate =  $(1 - 0.30) \times (0.12) = 0.084 = 8.4\%$ .

d. Value of the lease:

End of Year	Net Cash Flow from Lease	Present Value
0	\$125,500	-\$125,500
1	-39,499	-36,438
2	-44,503	-37,873
3	-31,165	-24,467
4	-6,835	-4,950
Net present value of leasing cash flows		\$21,272

e. Loan amortization:

Year	Loan Balance at Beginning of Year	Loan Payment	Interest (Beginning Loan Balance $\times$ 12%)	Reduction in Loan Principal	Loan Balance End of Year
0	\$150,000	\$49,385	\$18,000	\$31,385	\$118,615
1	118,615	49,385	14,234	35,131	83,484
2	83,484	49,385	10,018	39,367	44,117
3	44,117	49,385	5,294	44,091 <sup>a</sup>	100 <sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> Differences due to rounding, if three decimal places are maintained, the loan balance goes to zero.

**Project Financing****FILL IN THE BLANKS**

---

**Answers**

1. Structured, value; securitization, balance; vehicle, SPV, asset, securities
2. corporations, flow, corporations; project, SPV
3. lender, flows, repayment, paid, worst; guarantees
4. moving, sponsor; sponsors; construction, construction, operation, operating, profit; processing, distribution
5. loans, sponsor, credit, balance; third; independently
6. lenders, operation, time, produce, amounts, plan; startup
7. return, invested, leveraging, commercial; parties, debt, direct, indirect
8. Tax, depreciation, interest, depletion, research, dividends, foreign, capital, debt; benefits
9. new, taxes, transferred, use; 80%, consolidation, foreign, 50%

## SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS

---

### Answers

1. Project financing is attractive when the balance sheet remains unaffected and does not influence the credit rating of the sponsoring party. Project financing allows for highly leveraged projects to take place when they wouldn't otherwise.
2. There are varying credit exposures that arise throughout a project financing in the engineering and construction phase, startup phase, and operations phase.

A variety of guarantees and business partners can be utilized though the life of the project financing in order to maintain the appropriate credit support.
3. Risks must be identified, evaluated, examined, and evaded during the project in order to avoid project failures. Some common causes for project failures include the following:
  - Delay in completion
  - Cost overrun
  - Technical failure
  - Financial failure
  - Uninsured losses
  - Increased price or material shortages
  - Technical obsolescence
  - Loss of competitive edge
  - Poor management
  - Actual value of security is too low
4. Nonrecourse borrowing by third parties is structured in ways so that the third party's (or sponsor's) credit standing and balance sheet are relatively unaffected. This is often done by using a third party's credit rating or using multiple parties' credit ratings. When multiple backers for a project all have good credit ratings, this secures the lender's confidence that the project is viable and the risk for default is minimized. For the backers, the project risk is likewise minimized by sharing.

5. Benefits and incentives for project financings are:

- Availability of credit sources
- Availability of guarantees
- Better credit terms and interest costs
- Achieve higher leverage
- Meet legal requirements
- Regulatory problems avoided
- Segregated costs
- Financial statements unaffected until completion

Disincentives for project financing are:

- Complexity
- Complicated documentation
- Higher cost of borrowing funds
- Challenging negotiations with multiple parties



# Strategy and Financial Planning

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

---

### Answers

1. economic, forecasting, accounting; Economic, marketing, production, sales, costs; Accounting, summarize, project
2. comparative, producing, distributing; competitive; invest, more, return
3. strategy, maximizing; positive net present; objectives; strategic; financial, opportunities
4. Sales; Inaccurate, inventory, financing; misses, understating, overstating, problems
5. cash, economic, industry, market; uncertainty; sales, regression, market, opinions
6. familiarity, products, customers, competitors, future; expertise, evaluate; problems; persuade, allocate
7. Forecasting, short, long; people; optimistic, rosier, future; past, weight; responsible, rewarding, penalizing
8. budgeting, cash, income, balance; cash, most, income, balance; credit, coincide

9. pro forma, projected, future; income, income, revenues, expenses; investment, financing
10. analysis, cash; pro forma, asset, liability, equity; percent-of-sales, sales, income, sales, balance

## **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

---

### **Answers**

1. Financial planning is the allotment of resources to meet investment goals. Financial planning is important as it gives insight into the manager's decisions as to their perception of market conditions and how the dynamic market conditions will affect the investing and financing decisions of the company.
2. The firm's investment plans and financing plans mentioned in short answer question 1 are the firm's budgeting process. Operational budgeting refers to short-term budgeting and long-run planning is long-term budgeting.  
Budgeting determines feasible investments based on the current ability to finance them. Budgets gauge current and past performance of departments, divisions, or individual managers.
3. Regression is a mathematical model fitting technique that fits a line graphically expressing the relationship between two units. Regression is used to forecast based on historical data. Forecasting errors are the difference between the forecasted value and the actual value.
4. Analysis of cash flows allows the tracking of cash inflows and outflows as a result of operating, investing, and financing activities. Cash inflows should be greater than cash outflows. A cash budget, which is a detailed statement of the cash flows expected in future periods, can help identify financing and investment needs.
5. There are many analyses and forecasting techniques for cash flows. Each one is subject to its own prescribed assumptions concerning a variety of factors such as the economic conditions, market conditions, and other factors affecting cash flows. Two methods mentioned in the text that help gauge uncertainty of cash flows are sensitivity analysis

and simulation analysis. Sensitivity analysis is the changing of one variable at a time and examining its effect on all the other components. When more than one variable is changed at a time, this involves simulation analysis.

## PROBLEMS

---

### Answers

1. DoReMi Company:

Without adjustment:

$$\text{Current ratio} = \frac{\$500 + 300 + 300}{\$525} = 2.10$$

$$\text{Debt-to-equity ratio} = \frac{\$525 + 575}{\$525} = 2.75$$

With adjustments:

The cash account and, in turn, accounts payable, are the easiest and quickest to adjust. The other accounts can be altered accordingly and this should be taken into consideration for the long-term plan of the company. However in the interim, for the pro forma balance sheet for next month, the cash account can be easily reduced to adjust the current ratio, by the following amount:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{With adjustment, current ratio} &= \frac{\$500 - x + 300 + 300}{\$525 - x} \\ &= \frac{\$1,100 - x}{\$525 - x} = 4.0 \end{aligned}$$

Using algebra to solve for  $X$ ,  $\$X = 333$ . If DoReMi reduces cash by  $\$333$  (paying off  $\$333$  of short-term liabilities), the current ratio requirement is satisfied.

With adjustment to the cash account, the debt-to-equity ratio falls in line below 2 to 1.92.

Assets		Liabilities and Equities	
Cash	\$167	Accounts payable	\$192
Accounts receivable	300	Long-term debt	575
Inventory	300	Common equity	400
Plant and equipment	400	Total liabilities and equity	\$1,167
Total assets	\$1,167		

The cash balance may be less than what is needed for transaction purposes, thus introducing the risk of not having sufficient cash on hand.

Other means of reducing the current ratio are to (1) reduce accounts receivable (by not extending as much credit or being more aggressive in collections), which risks hurting future sales; or (2) reduce levels of inventory, which risks not having sufficient inventory to meet demand.

In addition, the firm can borrow using long-term debt (increasing its financial leverage) to add to its current accounts, increasing its current ratio. But this increases the financial risk of the firm and may increase the cost of debt and equity.

2.

Month	Sales	Collection of Month's Sales	Collection on Previous Month's Sales	Collection on Sales from Two Months Previous	Total Collections from July–Sept. Sales
July	\$12,000	\$2,400	from June	from May	\$2,400
August	\$20,000	\$4,000	\$6,720	from June	\$8,720
September	\$15,000	\$3,000	\$11,200	\$2,800	\$17,000

3. The predicted current, plant, and total assets are as follows:

	Base Year	As a % of Base Year Sales	Projected
Current assets	\$200,000	20%	\$280,000
Plant assets	500,000	50%	700,000
Total assets	\$700,000	70%	\$980,000